DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 184 315 FL 010 991

TITLE	Chinese-Mandarin: Basic Course. Volume IV, Lessons 40-51.
INSTITUTION	Defense Language Inst., Monterey, Calif.
PUB DATE	Jun 75
NOTE	355p.: For related documents, see FL 010 988-992 and FL 011 000-010.
AVAILABLE FROM	Defense Language Institute, Foreign Language Center, Nonresident Division, Presidio of Monterey, CA 93940 ($6.10; accompanying cassettes $9.60)
LANGUAGE	Chinese; English
EDRS PRICE	MF01/PC15 Plus Postage.
DESCRIPTORS	Audiolingual Methods; *Grammar; *Ideography; Instructional Materials; *Mandarin Chinese; *Military Science; Pattern Drills (Language); *Reading Instruction; *Second Language Instruction; Second Language Learning; Speech Instruction; Translation; Visual Aids; Vocabulary Skills; Writing Instruction
IDENTIFIERS	*Dialogs (Language Learning)

ABSTRACT

This is the fourth of 16 volumes of audiolingual classroom instruction in Mandarin Chinese. The course is designed to train native English speakers to Level 3 Foreign Service Institute proficiency in comprehension and speaking, and to Level 2 proficiency in reading and writing Mandarin. The present volume emphasizes the development of facility in reading and writing Chinese characters. Some attention is also paid to the development of oral facility. Instructional materials in the 12 lessons include dialogues, vocabulary drills, grammar analyses, translation and question-answering exercises, pattern drills, and reading and writing exercises. The emphasis of the course is on military science. (JB)

****
* Reproductions supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made *
* from the original document. *
****

CM 0004 S

CHINESE-MANDARIN

BASIC COURSE

VOLUME IV
LESSONS 40-51

ED184315

PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS
MATERIAL HAS BEEN GRANTED BY
DLI

TO THE EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES
INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC)

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH
EDUCATION & WELFARE
NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF
EDUCATION

THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN REPRODUCED EXACTLY AS RECEIVED FROM THE PERSON OR ORGANIZATION ORIGINATING IT. POINTS OF VIEW OR OPINIONS STATED DO NOT NECESSARILY REPRESENT OFFICIAL NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION POSITION OR POLICY

JUNE 1965

FL010991

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

THIS PUBLICATION IS TO BE USED PRIMARILY IN SUPPORT OF TRAINING MILITARY PERSONNEL AS PART OF THE DEFENSE LANGUAGE PROGRAM (RESIDENT AND NONRESIDENT). INQUIRIES CONCERNING THE USE OF THE MATERIALS, INCLUDING REQUESTS FOR COPIES, SHOULD BE ADDRESSED TO:

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE
FOREIGN LANGUAGE CENTER
NONRESIDENT INSTRUCTION DIVISION
PRESIDIO OF MONTEREY, CA 93940

TOPICS IN THE AREAS OF POLITICS, INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS, MORES, ETC., WHICH MAY BE CONSIDERED AS CONTROVERSIAL FROM SOME POINTS OF VIEW ARE SOMETIMES INCLUDED IN LANGUAGE TRAINING FOR DLIFLC STUDENTS, SINCE MILITARY PERSONNEL MAY FIND THEMSELVES IN POSITIONS WHERE CLEAR UNDERSTANDING OF CONVERSATIONS OR WRITTEN MATERIAL OF THIS NATURE WILL BE ESSENTIAL TO THEIR MISSION. THE PRESENCE OF CONTROVERSIAL STATEMENTS--WHETHER REAL OR APPARENT--IN DLIFLC MATERIALS SHOULD NOT BE CONSTRUED AS REPRESENTING THE OPINIONS OF THE WRITERS, OF THE DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE, OR OF THE DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE.

CM 0004 S

CHINESE-MANDARIN
BASIC COURSE

Volume IV
Lessons 40-51

June 1965

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

PRINTED JULY 1965
REPRINTED JUNE 1967
REPRINTED MARCH 1969
REPRINTED JANUARY 1972
REPRINTED FEBRUARY 1975
REPRINTED SEPTEMBER 1978

PREFACE

The Chinese-Mandarin Course, consisting of 180 lessons in 16 volumes, is one of the Defense Language Institute's Basic Course Series. The material was developed at the Defense Language Institute and approved for publication by the Institute's Curriculum Development Board.

The course is designed to train native English language speakers to Level 3 proficiency in comprehension and speaking and Level 2 proficiency in reading and writing Chinese-Mandarin. The texts are intended for classroom use in the Defense Language Institute's intensive programs employing the audio-lingual methodology. Tapes accompany the texts.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

LESSON **PAGE**

40 - 1

41 - 31

42 - 55

43 - 83

44 - 109

45 - 141

46 - 167

47 - 201

48 - 229

49 - 259

50 - 291

51 - 321

Vocabulary Index - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - 349

LESSON 40

I. Structural Dialogue

1.	A:	這兒 lí 中國 遠麼 ?	Is this place far from China?
	B:	很遠 .	Very far.
	A:	這兒 lí 日本 也很遠麼 ?	Is this place also very far from Japan?
	B:	也很遠 .	Also very far.
	A:	這兒 lí Yīng國 也很遠麼 ?	Is this place also very far from England?
	B:	Gèng 遠了 .	Even farther.
	A:	這兒 lí Dé國 近不近 ?	Is this place close to Germany?
	B:	不近 , 可是 法國 lí Dé國 近的很 .	Not close, but France is very close to Germany.
	A:	這兒 lí 舊jīn山 近麼 ?	Is this place close to San Francisco?
	B:	很近 .	Very close.
2.	A:	這兒 lí 舊jīn山 bǐ lí Táiwān 遠麼 ?	Is San Francisco farther from here than Taiwan?

	B:	Bǐ lí Táiwān 近 好jǐ千 yīnglǐ.	It is closer than Formosa by several thousand miles.
	A:	這兒 lí 舊jīn山 bǐ lí fēijīchǎng 遠麼?	Is San Francisco farther from here than the airport?
	B:	Bǐ lí fēijīchǎng 遠 一百 yīnglǐ.	San Francisco is a hundred miles farther than the airport from here.
	A:	這兒 lí fēijīchǎng bǐ lí 火車站 遠麼?	Is the airport farther from here than the railway station?
	B:	Bǐ lí 火車站 遠 一dyǎn兒.	Yes, it is a little farther from here than the railway station.
	A:	遠 jǐ yīnglǐ?	How many miles farther?
	B:	Chà不多 三 yīnglǐ.	Close to three miles.
3.	A:	這兒 lí Yīng國 有 lí 法國 那麼遠麼?	Is England as far as France from here?
	B:	沒有 lí 法國 那麼遠.	No, not as far as France from here.

	A:	這兒 lí Yīng國 有 lí 意國 (Italy) 那麼 遠 麼?	Is England as far as Italy is from here?
	B:	沒有 那麼 遠 .	Not as far.
	A:	這兒 lí 你們 jyā 有 lí 火車站 那麼遠 麼?	Is your house as far as the railway station is from here?
	B:	這兒 lí 我們 jyā chà 不多 五 yīnglĭ, lí 火車站 chà 不多 三 yīnglĭ. 所以 bĭ lí 火車站 遠 .	My house is almost five miles from here, and the railway station is almost three miles from here. Therefore my house is farther than the railway station.
4.	A:	先生 那個 yĭ子 lí hēibăn gēn 你 那個 yĭ子 lí hēibăn 一 yàng 遠 麼?	Are the teacher's chair and your chair the same distance from the blackboard?
	B:	不 一 yàng 遠 . 先生 那個 yĭ子 lí hēibăn fēicháng 近 .	They're not. The teacher's chair is very close to the blackboard.

L. 40

A:	我們 學校 lí 城裡 gēn Hǎijyūn 學校 lí 城裡 一 yàng 不一 yàng 遠 ?	Are our school and the Navy School the same distance from downtown or not?
B:	Chà 不多 一 yàng 遠 . 我們 學校 gēn Hǎijyūn 學校 都 lí 城裡 很 近.	Almost the same. Our school and the Navy School are both very close to town.

5.	A:	舊jīn山在美國西bù麼？	Is San Francisco in the western part of the United States?
	B:	在西bù.	Yes, it is in the western part.
	A:	Nyǒuywē在美國東byān兒麼？	Is New York in the eastern part of America?
	B:	在美國東byān兒.	Yes, it is in the eastern part.
	A:	上hǎi在中國東bù麼？	Is Shànghǎi in the eastern part of China?
	B:	Dwèi了.	That is right.
6.	A:	法國在Dé國西byān兒麼？	Is France to the west of Germany?
	B:	Dwèi了. 可是法國不是在Dé國西bù.	Right. However France is not in the western part of Germany.
	A:	Dé國在法國東byān兒麼？	Is Germany to the east of France?
	B:	Dwèi了. 可是不是在法國東bù.	Right. However it is not in the eastern part of France.

L. 40

A:	Jyā拿大 (Canada) 在美國 běibyān兒麼?	Is Canada to the north of the United States?
B:	Dwèi了. 可是不是在美國 běibù.	Right. However it is not in the northern part of the U.S.A.
A:	Mwò西哥 (Mexico) 在美國 nánbyān兒麼?	Is Mexico to the south of the U.S.A.?
B:	Dwèi了. 可是不是在美國 nánbù.	Right. However it is not in the southern part of the U.S.A.
A:	美國 nánbù 一定是在美國裡頭, dwèi不dwèi?	The southern part of the U.S.A must be in the U.S.A., isn't it right?
B:	Dwèi了. 可是美國 nánbyān兒不一定是在美國裡頭, dwèi不dwèi?	Right. To the south of the U.S.A. does not necessarily mean inside the U.S.A. Isn't that right?
A:	你說的也 dwèi了. 可是得 li 美國 nánbyān兒不太遠.	What you said is also right. However it should not be too far from the southern border of the U.S.A.

B: Mwò西哥 就 在 美國 外頭 . Mexico is just outside the United States.

II. Basic Dialogue

Bái:	張先生, nín 今天給我說一個 gù事 ba.	Tell me a story today, Mr. Jāng.
張:	好極了. 你 syǐhwan tīng cháng gù事麼?	Very well. Do you like to hear long stories?
Bái:	Dwèi了.	That is right.
張:	有一個人很 tè別.	There is a person who is very peculiar.
Bái:	甚麼意思?	What do you mean?
張:	他說的話老 gēn 別人說的不一 yàng. 要是有人說日本在中國東 byān兒,....	He always talks differently from other people. If someone says Japan is to the east of China,....
Bái:	他說甚麼?	What would he say?
張:	他說中國在日本西 byān兒.	He would say that China is to the west of Japan.
Bái:	要是有人說 E國在中國 běibyān兒. 他說甚麼?	What would he say, if someone says Russia is to the north of China?

張：他説中國在È國 nánbyān 兒.	He would say China is to the south of Russia.
Bái: 要是有人説 Yīng 國在法國 syīběibyan 兒，他 dzěn 麼説？	What would he say, if someone says England is to the northwest of France?
張：他説法國在 Yīng 國東 nánbyān 兒.	He would say that France is to the southeast of England.
Bái: 要是有人説 Dé 國的 pángbyān 兒有法國，他 dzěn 麼説？	What would he say if someone says that Germany is by the side of France?
張：他説法國的 pángbyān 兒有 Dé 國.	He would say that Germany is by the side of France.
Bái: 要是有人説 Yinglǐ bǐ 中國 lǐ cháng ne?	What if someone says a mile is longer than a Chinese li?
張：他説中國 lǐ bǐ Yīnglǐ dwǎn.	He would say a Chinese li is shorter than a mile.

L. 40

Bái: 要是 有人 說 ，美國 東bù的 人 bǐ 西bù的 人多，他 說 甚麼？	What would he say, if someone says that there are more people in the east than in the west of America?
張：他 說 西bù bǐ 東bù 人少.	He would say that there are less people in the west than in the east.
Bái: 要是 有人 說 美國 nán方 bǐ běi方 rè, 他 說 甚麼？	What would he say, if someone says the south is warmer than the north in America?
張：他 說 běi方 bǐ nán方 lěng.	He would say that the north is colder than the south.
Bái: 要是 有人 說 中國 lí 日本 五百多 lǐ, 沒有 lí 美國 那麼遠，他 說 甚麼？	What would he say if someone says China is more than five hundred Chinese li from Japan and not as far as it is from America?

張：	他說日本 lí 中國五百多 lǐ. 美國 lí 中國沒有日本 lí 中國那麼近.	He would say that Japan is five hundred Chinese li from China. From America to China is not as close as it is from Japan to China.
Bái:	要是有人說日本 lí 中國 bǐ Yīng 國 lí È 國近，他 dzěn 麼說？	What would he say, if someone says it is nearer from Japan to China than it is from England to Russia?
張：	他說 Yīng 國 lí È 國 bǐ 日本 lí 中國遠.	He would say from England to Russia is farther than it is from Japan to China.
Bái:	要是有人說從這兒到中國去 wàng 西走近一 dyǎn 兒，他 dzěn 麼說？	What would he say, if someone says it is closer to China from here by going west?
張：	他說 wàng 東走遠一 dyǎn 兒.	He would say it is farther by going east.
Bái:	要是有人說，從這兒到舊 jīn 山去，一定得 wàng	What would he say, if someone says you must

L. 40	bĕi 走, 他 dzĕn 麼說?	go north from here if you are going to San Francisco?
張:	他說別 wàng 東走, 別 wàng 西走, 也別 wàng nán 走.	He would say don't go east, west or south.
Bái:	他說的 gēn 別人說的眞不一 yàng!	What he says is really different from others!

Vocabulary

1.	běi	北	N:	north
2.	-bù	部	M:	section, part
3.	-byar	邊兒	M:	-side, border; part
4.	dūng	東	N:	east
5.	dūngběi	東北	N:	northeast
6.	dūngnán	東南	N:	southeast
7.	-fang	方	M:	area, region
7.1	běifang rén	北方人	N:	Northerner
7.2	běifang tsài	北方菜	N:	Northern style cooking
8.	lǐ	里	M:	a Chinese lǐ (1/3 mile)
8.1	Yīnglǐ	英里	M:	an English mile
9.	nán	南	N:	south
10.	pángbyar	旁邊兒	N:	the side of, flank
11.	syī	西	N:	west
12.	syīběi	西北	N:	northwest
13.	syīnán	西南	N:	southwest
14.	wàng, wǎng	往	CV:	towards (in direction of)

III. Grammar Analysis

1. Distance with co-verb lí

To indicate the distance from A to B, the co-verb lí (be distant from) is used between A and B, and then a stative verb ywǎn (far) or jìn (near) is used, as introduced in lesson 13. Ywǎn or jìn may be further modified by such adverbs as yìdyǎr, -de dwo, -de hěn, -de lìhai, or -jíle. When the statement involves numbers and measurements, the verb yǒu is used.

Jèr lí nèr ywǎn.	This place is far from there.
Jèr lí nèr ywǎnde hěn.	This place is very far from there.
Jèr lí nèr ywǎnde lìhài.	This place is terribly far from there.
Jèr lí nèr ywǎnjíle.	This place is extremely far from there.

2. Comparing distances

In comparing two distances, the co-verb bǐ is used between the two distances, and each distance is indicated by the co-verb lí between the two points. Therefore we have the following pattern involving four points. However, if any of the four points is understood, then one lí co-verbial phrase may be omitted.

A lí B bǐ C lí D	The distance from A to B as compared to the distance from C to D
A lí B bǐ C lí B (or A lí B bǐ C)	The distance from A to B as compared to the distance from C to B

In indicating whether the two distances are the same or not, the similarity and dissimilarity patterns with gēn or yǒu may be used.

A lí B gēn C lí D yíyàng ywǎn.	The distance from A to B is the same as from C to D.
A lí B yǒu C lí D nèmma ywǎn.	The distance from A to B is as far as from C to D.
Wǒ jyā lí sywésyàu bǐ tā jyā lí hwǒchējàn ywǎn.	It is farther from my house to school than it is from his house to the railway station.
Wǒ jyā lí sywésyàu bǐ tā jyā ywǎn.	My house is farther from school than his house is (from school).
Wǒ jyā lí sywésyàu gēn tā jyā lí fēijīchǎng yíyàng ywǎn.	It is the same distance from my house to school as it is from his house to the airport.
Wǒ jyā lí sywésyàu méiyou tā jyā lí nǐ jyā nèmma ywǎn.	The distance from my house to school is not as far as from his house to your house.

Translate the following:

1) San Francisco is a hundred and twenty miles from here.

2) Washington (Hwáshèngdwùn) is about three hundred miles from New York.

3) It is farther from Washington to New York than it is from here to San Francisco.

4) San Francisco is closer to this place than New York.

5) New York is extremely far from here.

6) My house is very close to the school.

3. Measures -byar and -bù compared

The measures -byar and -bù are alike in that they both indicate a part or a section:

Shànghǎi dzai Jūnggwo dūngbyar (or dūngbù).	Shanghai is in the eastern part of China.

These two measures differ in that -bù can only indicate part or section, whereas -byar may also refer to the regions beyond the border:

Tàipingyáng dzai Jūnggwode dūngbyar (NOT dūngbù).	The Pacific is east of China.
Měigwo nánbù	The southern part of U.S.A., the south.
Měigwo nánbyar	The southern part of U.S.A., the southern border area of U.S.A., or to the south of U.S.A., the area south of the border of U.S.A.

-byar is interchangeable with -tóu when used together with shàng, syà, lǐ, wài, chyán, and hòu.

shàngtou, shàngbyar	on top
syàtou, syàbyar	beneath, under
lǐtou, lǐbyar	inside
wàitou, wàibyar	outside
chyántou, chyánbyar	in front of
hòutou, hòubyar	at the back of

4. -fāng and bù compared

-fāng and bù are sometimes interchangeable. Dūngfāng implies the Orient, and Syīfāng implies the Occident.

5. Pángbyar

When pángbyar is used after some nouns, páng may be omitted and byar be suffixed to the noun:

hé pángbyar	hébyar	riverside
shwěi pángbyar	shwěibyar	by the side of the water
lù pángbyar	lùbyar	by the side of the road

Note -tóu is not interchangeable with -byar in this case.

IV. Pattern Drill*

Pattern 1

Distance with co-verb lí

我們學校lí城裏很近.	Our school is very near to town.

A lí B 近(or遠)

Examples:

1) 美國lí中國遠.	America is far from China.
2) Dé國lí法國近極了.	Germany is extremely close to France.
3) 這個學校lí fēijīchǎng不太遠,也不太近.	This school is not too far from, and not too near to, the airport.
4) 這個城的gūnggùng-chì車站lí火車站近不近?	Is the bus station in this city close to the railway station?

Exercise:

a. Answer the following questions orally:

1) Jèr lí Nyǒuywē hěn ywǎn ma?

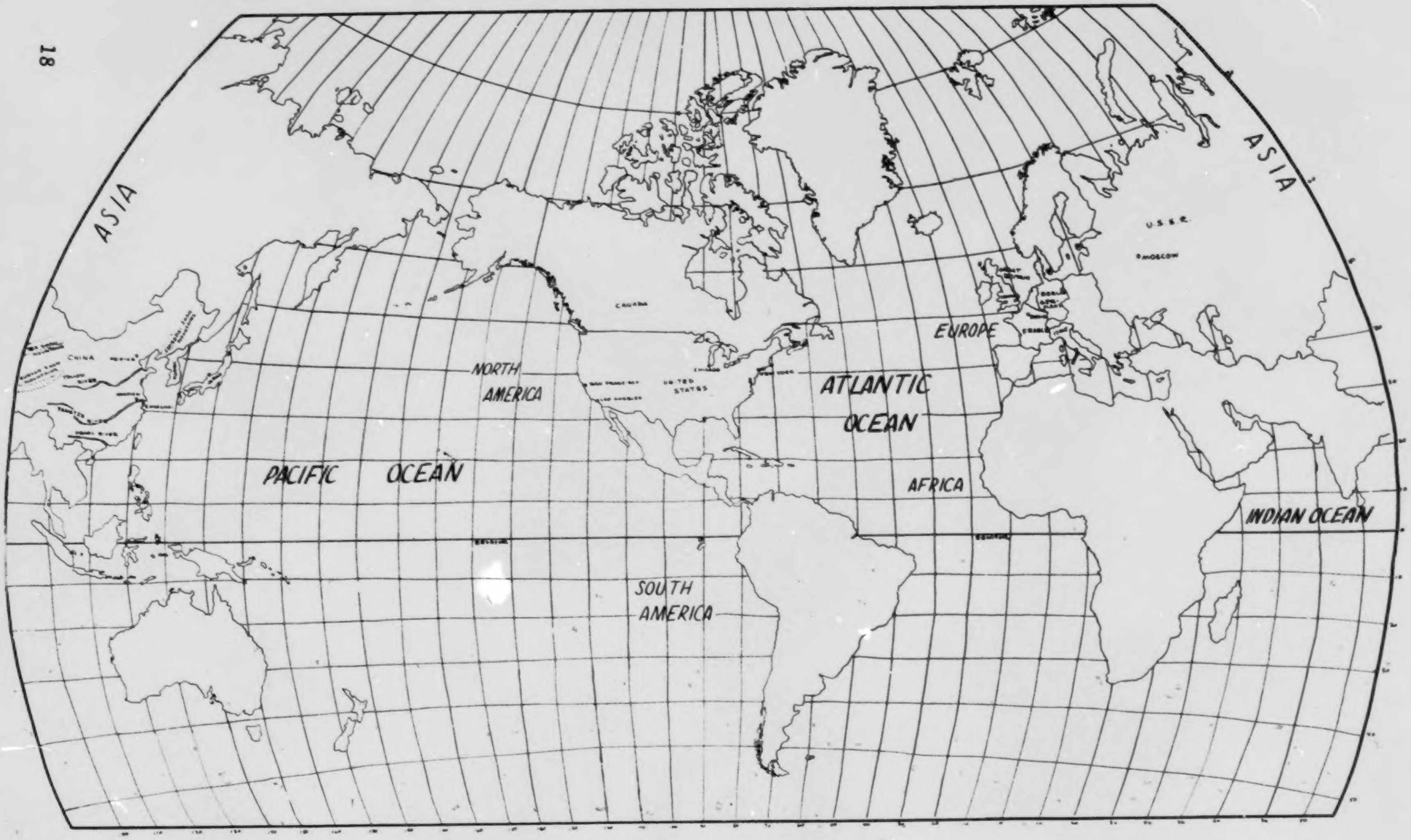
2) Nǐ jyā lí Měigwo dūngbù jìn bujìn?

3) Wǒmen sywésyàu shānsyàde fàngwǎr lí shūpù ywǎnde lìhai ma?

4) Jūnggwo gēn Rběn dōu lí Měigwo syībyār hěn ywǎn ma?

5) Yíge lí jèr hěn ywǎnde dìfang, nǐ yíkè jūng dzǒudedàu dzǒubudàu?

*Use the map on page 18


ASIA
ASIA
U.S.S.R.
MOSCOW
CHINA
CANADA
NORTH AMERICA
UNITED STATES
NEW YORK
ATLANTIC OCEAN
EUROPE
AFRICA
PACIFIC OCEAN
INDIAN OCEAN
SOUTH AMERICA
EQUATOR

Pattern 2

Comparing distance

A: (a) 法國lí Dé國bǐ 美國 lí 中國近. France is closer to Germany than America is to China.

A lí B bǐ C lí D 近 (or 遠)

Examples:

1) 先生 lí 這個門bǐ 學生 lí 那 sye chwānghu 近. The teacher is closer to this door than the students are to those windows.

2) 中國nánbù lí È 國 bǐ 美國nánbù lí Jyā拿大近麼? Is the southern part of China closer to Russia than the southern part of America is to Canada?

3) Jyā 拿大東byān兒 lí 西byān兒 bǐ 美國東byān兒 lí 西byān兒遠. The distance between the East and West of Canada is farther than the distance between the East and West of the United States.

Exercise:

Answer the following questions orally:

1) Měigwo dūngbù lí syībù bǐ R̀běn dūngbù lí syībù ywǎn ma?

2) Ègwo nánbyār lí běibyār bǐ Yīnggwo nánbyār lí běibyār ywǎn ma?

3) Jūnggwo nánfang lí běifang bùbǐ Dégwo nánfang lí běifang jìn ma?

4) Jèige lóu lí pángbyār nèige lóu bǐ nǐ jyā lí sywésyàu ywǎn ma?

(b) 法國 lí Dé國 bǐ 美國 lí Dé國近.
(or Dé國 lí 法國 bǐ Dé國 lí 美國近.)

The distance between France and Germany is shorter than that between the United States and Germany.

A lí B bǐ C lí B 近 (or 遠)

or 法國 lí Dé國 bǐ 美國 (lí Dé國) 近.

France is closer to Germany than the United States is.

A lí B bǐ C 近 (or 遠)

or 法國 (lí Dé國) bǐ 美國 lí Dé國近.

same as above

A bǐ C lí B 近 (or 遠)

Examples:

1) 這個城 lí Nánjīng bǐ Nyǒuywē lí Nánjīng 近.
(or Nánjīng lí 這個城 bǐ (Nánjīng) lí Nyǒuywē 近.

It is closer from this city to Nánjīng than from New York to Nánjīng. (or The distance between this city and Nánjīng is shorter than that between New York and Nánjīng.)

2) 美國 lí 中國 bǐ 日本西-nánbù 遠麼?

Are the United States further away from China than southwestern Japan?

3) Nyǒuywē bǐ 舊 jīn山 lí Táiwān 遠.

New York is further away from Taiwan than San Francisco.

Exercise:

Render the following questions into Chinese orally and answer them in Chinese:

1) Is the northern part of China closer to the U.S.S.R. than the southern part of China?

2) Is the Northwest of the United States farther from China than the Northeast?

3) Can you see that the Southwest of the United States is nearer to China than the Southeast?

4) Does every American know that the Southwest of the United States is farther from the North Pole than the Southwest of Canada?

5) Is the Navy School closer to your house than our school?

B: (a) 我們學校 lí 火車站 gēn Hăijyūn 學校 lí chì 車站 一 yàng 遠.

Our school is just as far away from the railway station as the Navy School is from the bus station.

A lí B gēn C lí D (不) 一yàng 遠

(b) 我們學校 lí 火車站 gēn Hăijyūn 學校 lí 火車站 一yàng 遠. (or 火車站 lí 我們學校 gēn (火車站) lí Hăijyūn 學校 一yàng 遠.

Our school is the same distance to the railway station as the Navy School.

A lí B gēn C lí B (不) 一 yàng 遠

or 我們學校 lí 火車站 gēn Hăijyūn 學校 (lí 火車站) 一yàng 遠.

A lí B gēn C (不) 一yàng 遠

or 我們學校 lí 火車站 gēn Hăijyūn 學校 lí 火車站 一yàng 遠.

A lí B gēn C lí B (不) 一yàng 遠

C: (a) 美國 lí Táiwān 沒有日本 lí 上hăi 那麼近.	The distance between the United States and Taiwan is not as short as the distance between Japan and Shanghai.

A lí B(沒)有 C lí D 那麼(or 這麼) 遠(or 近)

(b) 美國 lí Táiwān 沒有日本 lí Táiwān 那麼近.	The distance between the United States and Taiwan is not as short as the distance between Japan and Taiwan.

A lí B(沒)有 C lí B 那麼 or 這麼 遠 (or 近)

or 美國 lí Táiwān 沒有日本 (lí Táiwān) 那麼近.

A lí B(沒)有 C 那麼 (or 這麼) 遠 (or 近)

or 美國 (lí Táiwān) 沒有日本 lí Táiwān 那麼近

A(沒) 有 C lí B 那麼(or 這麼) 遠(or 近)

Examples:

1) A. Táiwān nánbyān兒 lí bĕibyān兒 gēn 這兒 lí 舊jīn山 一yàng 不一yàng 遠?	Is the distance between the southern and northern parts of Taiwan the same as that between here and San Francisco?
B. Chà 不多 一yàng 遠.	They are almost the same.

	A. 這兒 lí Hwáshèngdwùn gēn lí 中 bù 不一yàng 遠麼?	Isn't the distance between here and Washington the same as that between here and central United States?
	B. 不一yàng 遠. 這兒 lí Hwáshèngdwùn bǐ lí 中 bù 遠.	It is not the same. The distance between this place and Washington is longer than that between here and central United States.
2)	A. È 國 lí Běi 極 沒有 中國 lí Běi 極 那麼近, dwèi 不 dwèi?	The distance between Russia and the North Pole is not as near as that between China and the North Pole, is this right?
	B. 不 dwèi. 中國 lí Běi 極 沒有 È 國 那麼近.	You are wrong. The distance between China and the North Pole is not as close as that between Russia and the North Pole.
	A. Jyā 拿大 lí Nán 極 有 沒有 È 國 lí Nán 極 那麼遠?	Is the distance between Canada and the South Pole the same as that between Russia and the South Pole?
	B. 我看 Jyā 拿大 gēn È 國 都 lí Nán 極 fēicháng 遠.	I think that both Canada and Russia are extremely far from the South Pole.

Exercise:

Answer the following questions orally:

1) Jèige wūdz lí lóutī gēn nèige wūdz lí lóutī yiyàng bùyiyàng ywǎn?

2) Jèige wūdz diyíge chwānghu gēn dièrge chwānghu lí hēibǎn bùyiyàng ywǎn ma?

3) Jèige chéng lí Nyǒuywē gēn Hwáshèngdwùn chàbudwō yíyàng ywǎn ma?

4) Nyǒuywē gēn jèige chéng lí Běijí yíyàng bùyiyàng ywǎn?

5) Měigwo syīběibyār lí Yīnggwo méiyou dūngběibyār lí Fàgwo nèmma jìn ma?

6) Jūnggwo dūngnánbyār lí Ř bĕn méiyou syīnánbyār dzèmma jìn ma?

Pattern 3

The use of the co-verb wàng

從這個城 wàng 東走是美國東 bu.	Eastward from this city is America's East.

Examples:

1)	從這兒 wàng běi 走能到那兒?	Where can you get to from here to the North?
2)	從這兒坐fēijī wàng 西 fēi 可以到中國 gēn 日本.	Flying west from here, one can get to China and Japan.
3)	先 wàng 東, 走兩 Yīnglǐ, dzài wàng nán, 就到 Hǎijyūn 學校了.	Go east first for two miles, then go south, (then) you'll get to the Navy School.
4)	你 dzèn 麼 hái wàng 前byān兒開? 前byān兒是一 tyau 河 a!	Why are you still driving forward? There is a river ahead (of you)!

Exercise:

Answer the following questions orally:

1) Tsúng jèr wàng něibyār dzǒu néng dàu Nyǒuywē ma?

2) Tsúng jèr wàng běi dzǒu dwōshau Yīnglǐ jyòu dàu Jyòujīnshān le?

3) Tsúng Měigwo wàng nán fēi, fēidedàu fēibudàu Jūnggwo?

4) Dzwòjànde shŕhou rénrén dōu wàng chyānbyār pǎu. Yàushr nǐ hěn pà, wàng hòubyār pǎu, budyōulyǎn ma?

5) Dàu Jūnggwo chyù, wàng dūng dzǒu gēn wàng syī dzǒu něityáu lù jìn?

6) Tsúng Měigwo dzwò chwán wàng dūngnán dzǒu dwōshau Yīnglǐ jyòu kéyi dàu Táiwān le?

7) Wàng dūngbyān kāide chìchē yídìng dàu Hwáshèngdwùn ma?

Homework

Render the following sentences into Chinese orally:

1) Is this school extremely far from that hotel?

2) Are all the students' chairs close to the blackboard?

3) No one wants to go to the stores which are extremely far from here.

4) Is Beiping closer to western United States than to eastern United States?

5) Is the distance between the eastern and western part of France shorter than the distance between the eastern and western part of China?

6) Is it farther from the southwest of the United States to England than from the southeast of the United States?

7) You can reach the North Pole if you fly northwest from New York.

8) If you go down Franklin Street, you will cross the main street of this city.

V. Reading

A. Characters (Nos.197-203)

197.	打	dǎ	V:	fight, beat	打 jàng	- fight, make war
198.	算 祘	swàn	BF:	打算 (plan to) [V: calculate]	打算	- plan to
199.	告	gàu	BF;	tell	告訴	- tell, inform
200.	訴	sù, sùng	BF:	tell	别告訴他	- don't tell him
201.	帶	dài	V:	take or bring along	帶錢	- take (along) money
					不帶孩子去	- not taking children along
202.	孩	hái	BF:	child	孩子	- child
					小孩子	- (small) child
					女孩子	- girl
					男孩子	- boy
203.	玩	wán	V:	play	玩兒	- play
					玩兒一會兒	- play for a while

B. Sentences

1. 你明天晚上打算作甚麼？

2. 出去玩兒.

3. 自己一個人去麼?

4. 帶孩子一 kwài 兒去.

5. 天天念書寫字沒工夫看朋友.

6. 他在城外頭的那個學校教唱歌兒.

7. 你知道甚麼時候了麼?

8. Děng 我看看手表. 八 dyǎn 鐘了.

9. 弟弟,別跑的那麼快. 走進去!

10. 父親不懂你的意思.

11. 在前頭站je 的那個人願意 hē 茶.

12. 那件衣shang 一定很貴.

13. 請問,貴姓?

14. 我姓王,名字叫大有.

15. 站起來,把門開開,把 chwānghu 關上.

16. 後頭那張畫上有山有河. 河裡有魚.

17. 請那位太太把那張紙拿起來.

18. 母親告訴我先吃菜後吃 dyǎn 心.

19. 把筆放在那兒了? 幫je 我找一找.

20. 要是出門.應當買新車.舊車太慢.

21. 美國有一萬萬六千三百多萬人.

22. 從這兒到你們那兒遠不遠?

23. Wàng 東走很近, wàng 西走遠一dyǎn兒.

C. Story

我有一個很好的美國朋友姓張. 張先生告訴我他打算下月gēn他太太帶je孩子到中國去玩兒玩兒, 問我走那tyáu路最近. 我告訴他:「最近的路是坐fēijī, 從Nyǒuywē wàng běi fēi, 到了Běi極, dzài wàng nán fēi, gwò了È國的東bù就到中國了. 這tyáu路一gùng有七千多Yīnglǐ.」

張先生說:「從Yīng國,法國那byān兒去,不bǐ這tyáu路gèng近麼?」我說:「不. 這tyáu路遠. 因為你得先坐船到Dé國; dzài坐火車到È國, 走chà不多半個月到

中國.」

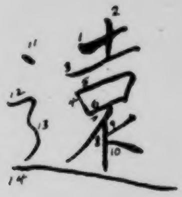
張先生又問:「wàng 西走也到得了中國麼?」我說:「到得了,可是這 tyáu 路遠的很. 你得先到舊 jīn 山. 從那兒坐二十 jǐ 天的船到上 hǎi. 這 tyáu 路 swéirán* 最遠, 可是最有意思. 你 hái 可以到日本去看看. 你應當走這 tyáu 路.」

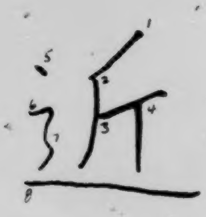
---

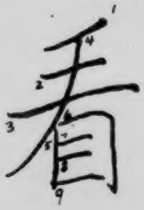
* swéirán 雖然 MA: although, in spite of

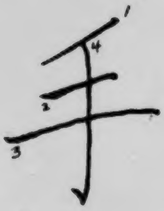
VI. WRITING

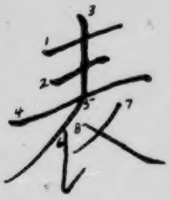
A. Writing (Characters 126-130)











B. Radicals

1. 辶 (stop and go,162) as in: 遠, 近
2. 目 (eye, 109) as in: 看
3. 手 (hand, 64) as the word: 手
4. 衣 (clothes, 145) as in: 表

Lesson 41

I. Structural Dialogue

1.	A:	你有多gāu?	How tall are you?
	B:	我有五chř七tswùn-半gāu.	Five feet, seven and half inches.
	A:	你哥哥有多大?	How old is your elder brother?
	B:	二十五swèi了.	Twenty-five years old
	A:	這兒lí舊jīn山yǒu多遠?	How far is San Francisco from here?
	B:	有一百二十多Yīnglǐ.	More than a hundred and twenty miles.
	A:	我們學校lí fēijī-chǎng有jǐlǐ?	How many miles from our school to the airport?
	B:	我們學校lí fēijī-chǎng有五Yīnglǐ.	It is five miles from our school to the airport.
2.	A:	Bái Lyánjǎng lǐhai麼?	Is your Company Commander Bái strict?
	B:	Lǐhai的很.	Very strict.
	A:	這兒lí你jyā很近麼?	Is your house very near from here?
	B:	近的很.	Very near.

	A:	Syàn 在 舊 chì 車 pyányi 麼？	Are old cars cheap now?
	B:	Pyányi 的 很.	Very cheap.
3.	A:	這個 yǐ 子 bǐ 那個 dī 麼？	Is this chair lower than that?
	B:	Dī 多 了.	Much lower.
	A:	為甚麼 那麼 dī?	Why is it so low?
	B:	這個 是 小孩子 坐 的， 那個 是 大人 坐 的.	This is for children, that is for adults.
	A:	Dī jǐtswùn?	Lower by how many inches?
	B:	Chà 不多 七 tswùn.	Almost seven inches.
4.	A:	這 lyàng dzàijùng 車 bǐ 那 lyàng 大 麼？	Is this truck larger than that?
	B:	大 多 了.	Much larger.
	A:	大 多少？	How much larger?
	B:	這 lyàng bǐ 那 lyàng 大 的 多.	This is much larger than that.
5.	A:	這個 jwō 子 bǐ 那個 jwō 子 cháng 麼？	Is this table longer than that table?
	B:	Cháng 一 dyǎn 兒.	A little longer.

	A:	Cháng 多少 ?	Longer by how much?
	B:	Cháng 不到 半tswùn.	Longer by less than half an inch.
6.	A:	這 lyàng chì 車 bǐ 那 lyàng 新麼 ?	Is this car newer than that?
	B:	新 一dyǎn 兒.	A little newer.
	A:	我看都是一九六三的.	I think they are both 1963 models.
	B:	這 lyàng 是 九月的，那 lyàng 是 三月的 .	This is the September model and that is the March model.
	A:	這 lyàng 開了多少 Yīnglǐ 了 ?	How much mileage has this car?
	B:	Chà 不多 一萬多 Yīnglǐ.	Almost ten thousand miles.
	A:	那 lyàng 開了多少 Yīnglǐ 了 ?	How much mileage has that car?
	B:	已jing 兩萬 Yīnglǐ 了.	Already twenty thousand miles.
7.	A:	這 tyáu 魚 bǐ 那 tyáu 魚 dwǎn 麼 ?	Is this fish shorter than that fish?

	B:	Dwǎn 的 不多.	Not much shorter.
	A:	Dwǎn jǐtswùn?	Shorter by how many inches?
	B:	不到 半tswùn.	Less than half an inch.
8.	A:	你 哥哥 bǐ 你 ǎi 麼?	Is your elder brother shorter than you?
	B:	我 bǐ 他 ǎi.	I am shorter than he.
	A:	Ǎi 多少?	Shorter by how much?
	B:	他 五chř 三tswùn, 我 四chř 十一.	He is five feet three inches, and I am four feet eleven.
	A:	Yīngchř ba?	In English feet?
	B:	Dwèi 了. 中國chř 没有 十一 tswùn.	Right. There aren't eleven inches in a Chinese foot.
	A:	為甚麼?	Why?
	B:	中國 chř 一chř 就有 十 tswùn.	There are only ten inches in a Chinese foot.
9.	A:	你看, 那個 jyūngwān 的 jyūnfú 多好看!	Look, how nice that officer's uniform is!
	B:	Dwèi 了, jyūngwān 的 jyūnfú 真好看!	Yes, officers' uniforms are really nice.

A:	那個 kūngjyūn jyūngwān 多 gāu a!	How tall that air force officer is!
B:	那個 kūngjyūn jyūngwān 真 gāu!	That air force officer is really tall!
A:	那個 hăijyūn jyūngwān 多年chīng a!	How young that naval officer is!
B:	真 年chīng, kǔngpà 不到 二十五 swèi ba.	He certainly is young, probably he is not over 25.

II. Basic Dialogue

Bái:	前天 Lǐ先生 lí開 舊jīn山 的 時候, nín 去了麼?	Did you go when Mr. Lǐ left San Francisco day before yesterday?
張:	我去了. 我們 sùng 他 到 fēijīchǎng 的.	Yes, I did. We went with him to the airport.
Bái:	他的 fēijī 一jŕ fēi 到 中國 去麼?	Was the airplane on a non-stop flight to China?
張:	不是 一jŕ fēi 到 中國 去, 他們要 jīnggwo 日本.	No, not to China without stops. They will pass through Japan.
Bái:	Nín sùng 他 到 fēijīchǎng 去的 時候, dzěn 麼 走的?	How did you go when you accompanied him to the airport?
張:	從他 jù的 lyǔgwǎn 出來 以後, 就坐上了 我的 chì 車.	We got on our car after we came out from the hotel where he was staying.
Bái:	誰 開的 車?	Who did the driving?
張:	我 開的. Chì 車 裡頭 坐了 六個人.	I did. There were six people in the car.
Bái:	都 有 誰?	Who were they?

張:	我太太 gēn 我, Lǐ 先生, Lǐ 太太, 你父親 gēn 你母親.	My wife, myself, Mr. and Mrs. Lǐ, and your parents.
Bái:	你們 dzěn 麼坐的?	How did you sit in the car?
張:	在前頭, 你父親坐在當中, 我開車坐在他 dzwǒbyān 兒.	In the front seat, your father sat in the middle and I sat at his left driving.
Bái:	誰坐在他 yòubyān 兒?	Who sat at his right?
張:	Lǐ 先生.	Mr. Lǐ.
Bái:	後頭, 誰在當中?	In the back seat, who sat in the middle?
張:	Lǐ 太太, 你母親在他 dzwǒbyān 兒, 我太太在他 yòubyān 兒.	It was Mrs. Lǐ, and your mother sat to her left, and my wife to her right.
Bái:	舊 jīn 山的 fēijīchǎng lí hǎi 有半 lǐ 路麼?	Is it half a mile from San Francisco airport to the sea?
張:	Chà 不多有半 lǐ 路.	Almost half a mile.

Bái:	你們在 fēijīchǎng 吃了一 dyǎn 兒東西麼?	Did you have anything to eat at the airport?
張:	Děng fēijī 的時候, swéibyàn 吃了一dyǎn 兒. Lǐ 先生 sùng 給你一本書, 我給你帶回來了.	We had a little bit of something to eat while waiting for the airplane. Mr. Lǐ gave you a book which I brought back for you.
Bái:	Syèsye nín, fèisyīn, fèisyīn! Fēijīchǎng 一定人多的很 ba.	Thank you for your trouble. There must be a lot of people at the airport, I suppose.
張:	Dwèi 了. 人多的很. 我看見了一個很 ǎi 的人.	That is right. Very many people. I saw a man who was very short.
Bái:	有多麼 ǎi?	How short was he?
張:	Tsái 二 chř 三 tswùn. 我說的是 Yīngchř Yīngtswùn.	Only two feet three inches. I am referring to the English foot and inch.
Bái:	Lǐ 先生到中國去, 知道中國 chř, 中國 tswùn gēn 我們用的 Yīngchř Yīng-	Does Mr. Lǐ know that the Chinese foot and inch are different from the English foot and inch that we are

	tswùn 不一yàng麼?	using?
張:	我想他知道中國chř bǐ Yīngchř cháng麼?	I think he knows. Is a Chinese foot longer than an English foot?
Bái:	Cháng 一dyǎn兒, 不到半tswùn.	A little longer. Longer by less than half an inch.
張:	你dzěn麼知道中國chř gēn 我們的不一yàng?	How did you know that a Chinese foot is not the same as our foot?
Bái:	這本書裡頭說的. 中國chř, 一chř有十tswùn.	It is explained in this book. There are ten Chinese inches in a Chinese foot.
張:	我們的Yīngchř, 一chř有十二tswùn.	There are twelve inches in an English foot of ours.

Vocabulary

15.	búdàu	不到	A:	less than
16.	chř	尺	M: N:	a Chinese foot a ruler
16.1	Yīngchř	英尺	M:	foot (English)
17.	dāngjūng	當中	N:	center, middle, in the midst
18.	dwó, dwóma	多, 多麼	A:	how SV? to what degree; oh, how SV!
19.	dzǒu	走	V:	go by way of; go (as to cars, watches, etc.)
20.	dzwǒ	左	N:	left (opp. right)
21.	fèisyīn	費心	IE:	I have put you to too much trouble.
22.	hǎi	海	N:	sea
22.1	hǎibyār	海邊兒	N:	seaside, beach
23.	jīnggwo	經過	V:	pass through or by, via
24.	líkai	離開	RV:	leave (a place)
25.	swéibyàn	隨便	IE:	do as one pleases (lit. follow one's convenience)
26.	tsái	才	A:	just; merely
27.	tswùn	寸	M:	inch (Chinese measure of length)
27.1	Yīngtswùn	英寸	M:	inch (English)

28.	yìjŕ	一直	A:	straight on, direct
29.	yòu	右	N:	right (opp. dzwǒ)

III. Grammar Analysis

1. Use of yǒu in measurement

In questions and answers involving measurements of distances, heights, ages, etc. yǒu is sometimes used as a verb. Dwóma or dwó (how, to what degree, to what extent) is a question word commonly used in this circumstance.

Nǐ(yǒu)dwó gāu?	How tall are you?
Wǒ(yǒu)lyòuchř gāu.	I am six feet tall.
Háidz (yǒu) dwó dàle?	How old is the child?
Háidz(yǒu)lyǎngswèi le.	The child is two years old.
Tsúng jèr dàu Nyǒuywē(yǒu) dwó ywǎn?	How far is it from here to New York?
(Yǒu)sānchyāndwō Yīnglǐ.	More than three thousand miles.

Translate the following:

1) How far is it from Shanghai to San Francisco?
2) It is more than 5,000 miles.
3) How long is this table?
4) Three and a half feet.
5) How old do you think he is?
6) I think he is more than forty already.

2. Adverbs of degree

Stative verbs have three degrees of comparison similar to English: hǎu (good), gèng hǎu (better), and dzwèi hǎu (best). The stative verb in the comparative degree, for instance, "better" can be further modified by adverbs of degree to show a little better, much better, or very much better by the use of adverbs of degree, such as yìdyǎr (a little), -de dwō (much), etc.

Nǐ jyā lí sywésyàu bǐ wǒ jyā lí sywésyàu ywǎn yìdyǎr.	Your home is a little farther from the school than my home.
Nǐ jyā bǐ wǒ jyā ywǎnde dwō.	Much farther.
Nǐ jyā bǐ wǒ jyā ywǎn hǎusyē.	A great deal farther.
Nǐ jyā bǐ wǒ jyā ywǎndwōle.	Very much farther.
Nǐ jyā bǐ wǒ jyā ywǎnde dwōle.	Very much farther.

Translate the following:

1) My home is half a Chinese li from school.
2) Your home is four Chinese li from school.
3) Is your home farther from school than mine?
4) Your home is much farther from school than mine.
5) How far is the railway station from school?
6) The railway station is six Chinese li from school.
7) The railway station is very much farther from school than my home.
8) The railway station is a little farther from school than your home.

IV. Pattern Drill

Pattern 1

The uses of yǒu in measurement

那 tyau 路(有)多麼 cháng?	How long is that road?
Subject(yǒu)dwóma (or dwó) SV	
那 tyau 路(有)九 lǐ cháng.	That road is nine miles long.
Subject(yǒu) NU-M-(N) SV	

Examples:

1) A. 那個 syànbīng(有)多麼 gāu?	How tall is that MP?
B. 那個 syànbīng (有)六 chř 四 tswùn gāu.	That MP is 6'4" tall.
2) A. 王 Shr̀gwānjǎng (有)多大 swèi-shù?	How old is Sgt. Wang?
B. 我看他(有)二十三四 swèi 了.	I think he's about 23 or 24 years of age.
3) A. 舊 jīn 山 lí 這兒(有)多遠 ?	How far is San Francisco from here?
B. 舊 jīn 山 lí 這兒(有)一百二十 Yīnglǐ.	It is 120 miles from here.
4) A. 我們學校 lí hǎibyān兒有五 lí 路沒有 ?	Is our school (as much as) five miles from the beach?
B. 我們學校 lí hǎibyān兒 不到五 lǐ 路, tsái 一 Yīnglǐ.	It is less than five miles from the beach to our school. It is only one mile.

Exercise:

Answer the following orally:

1) Píngcháng yíge fúchyáu yǒu dwó cháng?

2) Shřjyèshang dzwèi gāude shān yǒu dwóma gāu?

3) Nǐ chwānjede nèishwāng syé yǒu jǐtswùn cháng?

4) Nǐ jìde bújìde bùchyāng yǒu jǐchř jǐtswùn cháng?

5) Jèige lóu búdàu lyǎngchyān chř gāu ma?

6) Hēibǎn lí jèige wūdzde dāngjūng yǒu jǐchř?

7) Hwáshèngdwùn lí hǎi yǒu dwōshau lǐ?

8) Nǐ lí nǐ dzwǒbyār nèige sywésheng búdàu yìchř ma?

9) Nǐmen lyǎngge rénde yǐdz dāngjūng yǒu méiyou bànchř?

10) Měigwo nánfāngde nèisye chéng lí Jyānádà yǒu lyǎngchyānlǐ lù méiyou?

Pattern 2

Adverbs of degree

美國 lí 中國bǐ日本遠的多. 遠九千多lǐ.	The United States is much farther from China than Japan. It is more than 9000 miles farther.

Examples:

1) 先生的jwō子bǐ你們的yǐ-子lí chwānghu 遠一dyǎn兒.	The teacher's desk is a little farther from the window than your chairs.
2) 先生的jwō子bǐ你們的yǐ-子lí chwānghu遠四chř多.	The teacher's desk is a little over four feet farther from the window than your chairs.

3) 日本lí中國bǐ美國lí Yīng國近很多.	Japan is quite a bit closer to China than the United States to Great Britain.
4) 日本lí中國bǐ美國lí Yīng國近chà 不多三千 lǐ.	The distance between Japan and China is almost 3000 miles closer than between the United States and Great Britain.

Exercise:

Translate the following questions and answer them orally:

1) Is it a little farther from the coffee shop behind this building to the airport than from this building?

2) Is it much farther from this city to New York than from Washington, D.C.?

3) Is the first chair in this room a little closer to the door than the sixth chair?

4) Is Italy much closer to England than to China?

5) Is the United States three or four thousand miles farther from the North Pole than Canada ?

6) Is the northern part of China about two thousand miles closer to the U.S.S.R. than the southern part of China?

7) Are both Nanking and Shanghai one thousand miles closer to Japan than to the United States?

8) Is it much farther from San Francisco to this city than from New York to Washington, D.C.? How many miles farther?

9) Is your mother much taller than your father? By how many inches?

10) Is your left hand half an inch longer than your right hand?

Pattern 3

Direction to, or from, a given place

A: 從這個lóu到茶gwǎn兒去dzěn麼走?	How do you go from this building to the tea house?
B: 從這個lóu前邊兒當中的那個門出去,先wàng dzwǒ走,走五六十chř,dzài wàng dzwǒ一jŕ走,就到了.	Go out from the middle door at the front of this building, turn first to the left, walk around 50-60 feet, then turn left again, and you will arrive there.

Examples:

1) A. 坐 fēijī 到 Táiwān 去, wàng東běi fēi 麼?	Do you fly towards the Northeast when you go to Taiwan?
B. 不.坐 fēijī到Táiwān 去 wàng西nán fēi.	No. You fly Southwest when you go to Taiwan.
2) A. Wàng běi 去,jīnggwo Běi極,到的了到不了中國?	Can you reach China by going north, by way of the North Pole?
B. 到的了.Jīnggwo Jyā 拿大到Běi 極. 從 Běi極 dzài wàng nán 去,jīnggwo E 國就到中國了.	Yes. Go by way of Canada to the North Pole. You will get to China if you go southward from the North Pole, by way of Russia.
3) A. 從這兒到城裏去, wàng 那byān兒走?	Which direction do you go if you want to go to town?
B. Swéibyàn. Wàng dzwǒ 走, wàng yòu走,都行.那要看你到那個城.到Pacific Grove 去,wàng dzwǒ 走.到 Monterey 去,wàng yòu 走.	Both left or right is all right. It depends on which town you are going to. If you are going to Pacific Grove, turn left; Monterey, turn right.
A. Fèisyīn, fèisyīn!	Thank you for the trouble.

L. 41

Exercise:

Answer the following orally:

1) Tsúng jèr dàu Hǎijyūn Sywésyàu wàng nán dzǒu ma?

2) Tsúng jèige chéng dàu Měigwo Jūngbù chyù wàng syī dzǒu ma?

3) Nǐ tsúng jèige wūdz dàu lóutī nèr chyù wàng yòu dzǒu ma?

4) Tsúng jèr yìjŕ wàng dūng dzǒu néng dàu Nyǒuywē ma?

5) Tsúng Jyòujīnshān dzwò chwán yìjŕ wàng syī dzǒu nèng dàu
R̂běn ma?

6) Tsúng jèr dzwò fēijī yìjŕ wàng běi fēi dàudelyǎu Jyānádà
ma?

7) Tsúng nǐ nèr yìjŕ wàng chyán dzǒu jyòu dàu hēibǎn le ma?

8) Tsúng Měigwo dàu Jūnggwo jīnggwo R̂běn ma?

9) Tsúng Yìgwo dàu Fàgwo búbì jīnggwo Dégwo ma?

10) Tsúng jèr dàu hwǒchējàn jīnggwo bujīnggwo dàjyē?

11) Tsúng Měigwo yìjŕ dàu Jūnggwo, bùjīnggwo R̂běn, syíng busyíng?

12) Tsúng Měigwo dàu Dégwo chyù děi jīnggwo Yīnggwo ma?
Yìjŕ dzǒu dàudelyǎu dàubulyǎu?

13) Hěn dwō Měigwo bīng dzwò chwán dàu R̂běn chyù tsái yùng
lyǎngge lǐbài shr̀ jēnde ma?

14) Yàushr nǐ dzwò fēijī, shŕdyǎn jūng líkai syībù shŕèrdyǎn
jyòu dàu dūngbù, tsái yùng sz̀wǔge jūngtóu. Shr̀ bushr̀?

Homework

A: Read the following story orally several times:

Yŏu yìtyān wŏ gēn wŏ nyŭ péngyou kāichē dàu syāngsya chyù wár chyùle. Yīnwei nèr yŏu yíge hĕn chígwàide fángdz.

Wŏmen shàngwŭ shŕdyăn líkai jèr, yìjŕ wàng syībĕi dzŏu; tsái dzŏule sānkèjūng jyòu dàule.

Nèige fángdz chyántoude dì, dzwŏbyār gēn yòubyār yíyàng gāu. Wŏ bĭ wŏ nyŭ péngyou gāu sz̀tswùn. Kĕshr wŏ jàndzai dzwŏbyār, wŏ nyŭ péngyou jàndzai yòubyār de shŕhou, wŏ jywéde wŏ bĭ wŏ nyŭ péngyou ăi. Nĭ shwō chígwài buchígwài?

B: According to the contents of the above story answer the following questions orally without referring to the text:

1) Yŏu yìtyān wŏ gēn shéi dàu syāngsya chyù wár chyùle?

2) Wèishémma wŏmen dàu nèr chyù wár?

3) Wŏmen shémma shŕhou líkai jèr de? Shr̀ wàng nĕibyār dzŏude? Tsái dzŏule dwōshau shŕhou?

4) Nèige fángdz chyántoude dì, dzwŏbyār gēn yòubyār yíyàng buyíyàng gāu?

5) Wŏ jàndzai dzwŏbyār, wŏ nyŭ péngyou jàndzai yòubyārde shŕhou, wŏ jywéde wŏ bĭ tā gāu ma?

V. Reading

A. Characters (Nos. 204-211)

204.	喜	syǐ	BF:	be pleased with	喜歡	- like to, is fond of
205.	歡 欢	hwān	BF:	be pleased with	喜歡說話	- like to talk
206.	喝	hē	V :	drink	喝酒	- drink(liquor)
					喝茶	- drink tea
					不好喝	- displeasing to the taste (drinking)
207.	點 點 点	dyǎn	BF:	a little	一點兒	- a little bit
			M :	(for hour)	一點鐘	- one o'clock
					點心	- refreshment, snacks
208.	酒	jyǒu	N:	wine, liquor alcoholic drinks	賣酒的	- wine seller
					酒gwǎn 兒	- wine shop, bar
209.	睡	shwèi	V:	sleep	睡的不好	didn't sleep well
					睡覺	- sleep
210.	覺 觉	jyàu	BF:	sleep	睡覺	- sleep
		jywé	BF:	feel	覺得	- feel
					覺不出來	- can't feel(it)

211. 離 lí SV: from (be separated or distant from).
离
離這兒遠 - quite far from here
離開 - leave, separate

B. Sentences

1. 美國人都喜歡吃中國飯麼？
2. 我想最好先喝酒後吃飯.
3. 你願意甚麼時候吃點心？
4. 吃 wán 了飯以後 dzài 吃點心,行不行？
5. 你哥哥弟弟到甚麼地方去了？
6. 喝酒喝的太多了. 回 jyā 睡覺去了.
7. 你覺得人應當喝酒麼？
8. 我覺得人可以喝酒可是不要喝的太多.
9. 教你們法文的那位老先生甚麼時候離開的？
10. 一 jŕ 到九點 tsái 離開的.走了不到五分鐘.
11. 美國離日本 bǐ 離中國近一點兒.

12. 兒子女兒應當給父母作事. 你不必說:「fèi 心.」

13. 你看這本書多麼 pyányi, tsái 賣兩毛七分錢.

14. 這四個小孩子當中,誰真會用中國筆寫字?

15. 走 jīnggwo 城裡那 tyáu 路近的多;可是車很多,走不快.

16. 請問從我們學校到舊 jīn山去, dzěn 麼走? 有多麼遠?

17. 學生 bǐ 去年多的多,先生不够. 今年又來了好 jǐ 位男先生.

18. 父親昨天一定很忙,早上喝了一點兒水,甚麼都沒吃,就出門了.

C. Story

有一天,夜裡頭一點多鐘了. 我 è 了,打算到飯 gwǎn 兒去吃一點兒東西. 可是飯

gwǎn 兒都關門了. 沒法子, 我就到酒 gwǎn-兒去吃.

我進去以後, 一看有很多人, 我都不 rèn-shr; 可是我覺得那 sye 人都很有意思.

我要了一點兒點心, 一點兒菜, 一wǎn 茶.

我看見有一個人喝的太多了, 在 jwō 子 dǐ 下睡覺.

Hái 有三個人在一 kwài 兒說話說的很 gāusyìng, 把錢放在 jwō 子上. 賣酒的給他一點兒酒, 拿走一點兒錢.

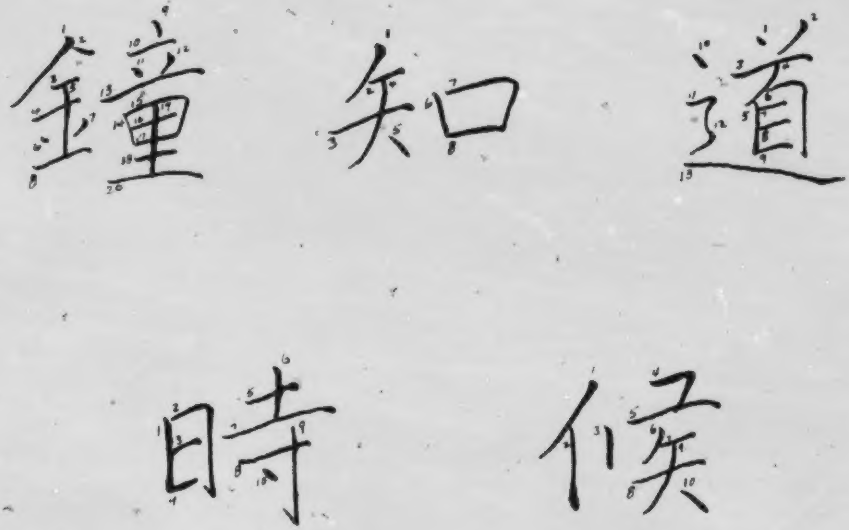
最有意思的是有一個人坐在 jwō子 dǐ 下, 自己跟自己說話, 有時候生 chì, 有的時候 syàu.

我走到他那張 jwō 子 dǐ 下問他:「為甚麼你有的時候生 chì 有時候 syàu?」

他說:「我給自己說 syàu 話. 要是我 tīng-見 gwo, 我就生 chì. 要是我沒 tīng 見 gwo, 我就 syàu.」

VI. WRITING

A. Writing (Characters 131-135)



B. Radicals

1. 金 (metal, 167) as in: 鐘
2. 矢 (arrow, 111) as in: 知
3. 辶 (stop & go,162) as in: 道
4. 日 (sun, 72) as in: 時
5. 亻 (man, 9) as in: 候

Lesson 42

I. Structural Dialogue

1.	A:	Lǐ 先生要買甚麼 你知道麼?	What does Mr. Lǐ want to buy, do you know?
	B:	Tīng 說要買 chì 車.	I heard that he wants to buy a car.
	A:	他要買新的, 舊的?	Does he want to buy a new one or an old one?
	B:	也 syǔ 是新的, 也 syǔ 是舊的.	Perhaps a new one, or perhaps an old one.
	A:	他要用多少錢?	How much is he going to spend?
	B:	兩千, 也 syǔ 三千.	Two or three thousand dollars.
	A:	他要買 Dé 國車, Yīng 國車?	Is he going to buy a German car or an English car?
	B:	Dé 國車, 也 syǔ 買 Yīng 國車.	A German car or perhaps an English car.
	A:	他一定不買 美國車麼?	Is he definitely not going to buy an American car?
	B:	不一定. 也 syǔ 買.	No, not definitely. He might buy one.

2. A:	你們吃中國飯是吃美國飯?	Do you eat Chinese food or American food?
B:	中國飯 hwò是美國飯我們都吃.	We eat both Chinese food and American food.
A:	你們小孩子用 kwài子吃中國飯，是用 dāuchā 吃中國飯?	Do your children use chopsticks or forks and knives to eat Chinese food?
B:	Dāuchā hwò是 kwài子，他們都會用.	They can use either chopsticks or forks and knives.
3. A:	這 lyàng chì 車，你買，hái是不買?	Do you want to buy this car or not?
B:	我不想買，想買 dzàijùng 車.	No, I am not planning to. I want to buy a truck.
A:	Dzàijùng 車，你會開，hái是不會?	Do you know how to drive a truck or not?
B:	當 rán 會，不會我就不買了.	I certainly do, otherwise I wouldn't buy it.
A:	這 lyàng dzàijùng 車三千 kwài: 貴，hái是不貴?	Three thousand dollars for this truck, is it expensive or not?

	B:	貴一點兒・我想到那個賣車的地方去。你 gēn 我去麼?	It is a little expensive. I am thinking of going to that dealer's place. Will you go with me?
	A:	我 gēn 你去.	Yes, I will go with you.
	B:	我們走 je 去, hái 是坐車去?	Do we go there on foot or by car?
	A:	我們走 je 去, 好麼?	Let's go on foot. How about it?
4.	A:	這本書; 你是看懂了, 是没看懂?	Did you read and understand this book, or didn't you?
	B:	我不 dàn 看懂了, bìngchyě 都 jì 得.	Not only do I understand it, I also remember everything.
	A:	你是看 wán 了, 是没看 wán?	Did you finish reading it, or didn't you?
	B:	我不 dàn 看 wán 了, bìngchyě 看 dì 二 tsz̀ 了.	I have not only finished it, but am reading it for the second time.
	A:	明天要念的書, 你是 yùbei 了, 是没 yùbei ne?	Have you prepared the lessons to be studied tomorrow or not?

	B: 不 dàn 明天的書 yùbei了, bìngchyě 後天的書也 yùbei了.	I have not only prepared the lessons for tomorrow, but also for the day after tomorrow.
5.	A: 你 chwān 的 chènshān hái是 十六tswùn 的, hái是 十七 tswùn 的?	Is the size of your shirt sixteen inch or seventeen inch?
	B: 我不那麼 pàng, lyán 十四 tswùn 的我都能chwān.	I am not that fat, I can even wear size fourteen.
	A: 你的 swèishu, hái是告訴我, hái是不告訴我?	Are you going to tell me your age or not?
	B: 我不能告訴你. 我 lyán 我女朋友也不告訴.	I can not tell you, nor even my girlfriend.
	A: 你有 jǐ個女朋友, 你 hái是告訴我, hái是不告訴我?	Are you going to tell me how many girlfriends you have, or aren't you?
	B: 我想告訴你, 可是 lyán 我自jǐ 也jì不 chīngchu了.	I want to, but I can't even remember clearly myself.

6. A:	你到中國去，是 wàng 東走，hái 是 wàng 西走？	Do you go east or west to get to China?
B:	Wàng 西走.	I go west.
A:	你是坐 fēijī, hái 是坐 chwán?	Will you go by airplane or by ship?
B:	我想坐 fēijī.	I plan to go by airplane.
A:	是一jŕ 到中國, hái 是 jīnggwo 日本？	Will you go to China non-stop, or will you go through Japan?
B:	Jīnggwo 日本.	I will go through Japan.
A:	你想在日本 jù 五天, hái 是 jù 十天？	Do you plan to stop in Japan for five days or ten days?
B:	Jù 五天.	I will stay for five days.

II. Basic Dialogue

Bái:	Tīng說nín要給我說一個很cháng的gù事，是真的麼？	I heard that you were going to tell me a long story, is it true?
張:	Dwèi了. 不dàn很cháng, bìngchyě很有意思.	Yes, not only a very long one, but also a very interesting one.
Bái:	那個gù事是美國gù事，是中國gù事?	Is that story an American story or a Chinese story?
張:	是美國gù事，也syǔ你tīnggwo了.	It is an American story. Maybe you have heard it.
Bái:	那個gù事，是說一個男人的事ching, hái是一個女人的事ching?	Is that story about a man or a lady?
張:	說的是一個男人的事ching. 有一天，他早上起來的很晚，可是得去作事.	It is about a man. One day he got up very late, but he had to go to work.

Bái:	他 jāují 不jāují?	Was he worried or not?
張:	當rán很jāují. 要不是他 pǎu到 jyē上去坐車，他 gèng要晚了.	Of course he was very worried. If he had not run to the street and got on a bus, he would have been even later.
Bái:	Píngcháng, 那個人是小心作事 hái是不小心作事?	Is the man ordinarily careful or not?
張:	Píngcháng 他老不太小心，有時候 lyán 應當作甚麼事都不知道.	Ordinarily he is never very careful. Sometimes he doesn't even know what he should do.
Bái:	他太太 píngcháng dwèi 他放心, hái是不放心?	Does his wife always worry about him or not?
張:	老不放心. Pà 他 bǎ 事ching 作 hwài了就沒人找他作事了.	She is always worried. She is afraid that he would do things wrong and no one would want him to work for them.
Bái:	這個人是喜歡作大事，是喜歡作小事?	Does he like to do big jobs or small jobs?

張:	作甚麼事他都不喜歡，lyán 最 rúngyi 的事也不喜歡.	He doesn't like any kind of work, not even the easiest work.
Bái:	Píngcháng 他坐 gūnggùngchì車去，hái是自 jǐ 開車去?	Does he usually go by bus or drive to work?
張:	他看不出來 húng gēn lyù. 他看 húng gēn lyù 都是一 yàng, 所以他不應當開車.	He shouldn't drive because he can't distinguish between red and green clearly. Red and green are alike to him.
Bái:	他看得出來 hwáng gēn lán 麼?	Can he distinguish between yellow and blue?
張:	他看得出來.	Yes, he can.
Bái:	Chígwài 的很. 他想作事麼?	That is very strange. Does he want to work?
張:	他沒錢的時候，tsái 想作事.	He wants to work only when he has no money.
Bái:	他叫甚麼名字?	What is his name?
張:	叫 Hwáng 美生.	His name is Měishēng Hwáng.

Bái: Hwáng 太太 也 作事 麼？	Does Mrs. Hwáng work too?
張：要不是 Hwáng 美生 這麼 bèn, 他 就 不想 去 作事 了.	She would not want to to work if Měishēng Hwáng were not so dumb.
Bái: Hwáng 美生 幫 他 太太 在 jyā 裡 作一點兒事麼?	Does Měishēng Hwáng help his wife in some of her work at home?
張：作一點兒事, 有的 時候 作 的 很好.	Yes, he does a little. Sometimes he does very well.

Vocabulary

30.	búdàn....bìngchyě.....		IE:	not only.... but also
30.1	búdàn	不但	MA:	not only
30.2	bìngchyě	並且	MA:	moreover
31.	dāngrán	當然	MA:	of course, naturally
32.	fàngsyīn	放心	V/SV:	rest assured
32.1	búfàngsyīn	不放心	SV:	uneasy (about)
33.	húng	紅	SV:	be red
34.	hwáng	黃	SV:	be yellow
35.	hwòshr	或是	MA:	either, or; whether
36.	jāují	着急	SV:	worried, get excited
37.	lán	藍	SV:	be blue
38.	lyán...dōu (yě)	連....都	CV:	even including, even
39.	lyù	綠	SV:	be green
40.	syǎusyin	小心	SV: V:	be careful look out for
41.	tsái	才	A:	then and only then, not until
42.	yàubúshr	要不是	MA:	(yàushr búshr) if not due to...
43.	yěsyǔ	也許	MA:	perhaps, maybe

III. Grammar Analysis

1. Choice-type questions accentuated

The alternatives presented in choice-type questions, whether the questions involve a choice between positive or negative, or between various other possible alternatives are accentuated by inserting shr̀ or háishr before them.

Nǐ chyù, shr̀ búchyù?	Are you going or aren't you?
Nǐ chyù, háishr búchyù?	Are you going or aren't you?
Nǐ shr̀ chyù, shr̀ búchyù?	Are you going or aren't you?
Nǐ háishr chyù, háishr búchyù?	Are you going or aren't you?
Nǐ shr̀ chyù, háishr búchyù?	Are you going or aren't you?
Shr̀ nǐ chyù, háishr tā chyù?	Are you going or is he going?
Háishr nǐ chyù, háishr tā chyù?	Are you going or is he going?

Translate the following:

1) I am going to buy a shirt for you. Do you like a blue one or a white one?
2) Do Chinese like red hats or black hats?
3) Do you like to become heavier or lighter?
4) Is an airplane or a tank more powerful?
5) Do you like hot weather or cold weather?
6) Is he an officer of the infantry or the cavalry?
7) Do you always study in your home in the evenings or at the school?

2. Alternative answers

In a statement, or an answer to a question, when two or more alternatives are given, hwòshr is used between the alternatives. In an English sentence of alternate answers, sometimes "whether" or "if" is used. In this case "if" can not be translated into yàushr.

Yú hwòshr ròu dōu hǎuchr̄.	Both fish and meat are delicious.
Hwòshr nǐ chyù hwòshr tā chyù, dōu syíng.	It is all right if either you go or he goes.
Wǒ hwòshr gēn nǐ chyù hwòshr gēn tā chyù.	I will go either with you or with him.
Hwòshr jīntyan mǎi hwòshr míngtyan mǎi, dōu kéyi.	It is all right if you buy it either today or tomorrow.

Translate the following:

1) I don't know if he is going or not.

2) Give me a necktie. Either a blue one or a black one will do.

3) I want to know if he is an infantry officer or an artillery officer.

4) He will go either today or tomorrow. That depends on the weather.

5) I forgot whether this river is longer than that one or not.

6) Please put this chair either in the kitchen or in the study.

7) Come to my place when you are free either today or tomorrow.

3. Inclusive and exclusive answers

3.1 The pattern "..lyán.....dōu..." is used to express an intense degree of exclusiveness as well as inclusiveness; the adverb yě is often substituted for dōu preceding the verbs in such expressions.

Tā chyùgwo hěn dwō dìfang. Lyán Nánjí tā dōu chyùgwo.	He has been to many places. He has even been to the South Pole.
Nín dàije chyán méiyou? Wǒ lyán yìmáu chyán yě méidài.	Do you have any money with you? No, I didn't bring along a dime.

3.2 The pattern "..búdàn ..bìngchyě..." is equivalent to the expression in English phrase 'not only...but also', the adverb yě is often substituted for bìngchyě.

Wǒmen búdàn yǒu ywándždàn, bìngchyě yǒu hěn dwō byéde ywándž wǔchì.	Not only do we have atomic bombs, we also have many other kinds of atomic weapons.
Tā búdàn búhwèi yùng hwǒjyàntǔng, yě búhwèi yùng chīngjīchyāng.	He not only doesn't know how to use a rocket launcher, but also can't use light machine guns.

Translate the following:

1) He doesn't even remember my name.

2) Even my child can speak Chinese now.

3) Not only can we read, we can also write.

4) That man not only has a boat, but also a small airplane.

IV. Pattern Drill

Pattern 1

Choice-type questions accentuated

你是喜歡是不喜歡？	Do you or don't you like (it)?

Examples:

1)	你 bānjyā,是不 bānjyā?	Are you or aren't you moving?
2)	你是 bānjyā, 是不 bānjyā?	Are you or aren't you moving?
3)	你是 bānjyā, hái是不 bānjyā?	Are you or aren't you moving?
4)	你 hái是 bānjyā, hái 是 不 bānjyā?	Are you or aren't you moving?
1)	是你 bānjyā, 是他 bānjyā?	Is it you or he who is moving?
2)	是你 bānjyā, hái是他 bānjyā?	Is it you or he who is moving?
3)	Hái是你 bānjyā, hái 是 他 bānjyā?	Is it you or he who is moving?

Exercise:

a. Say the following and answer it orally:

1) Nǐ shàngchyu búshàngchyu?

2) Nǐ shr̀ shàngchyu, shr búshàngchyu?

3) Nǐ shr̀ shàngchyu, háishr búshàngchyu?

4) Nǐ háishr shàngchyu, háishr búshàngchyu?

5) Shr̀ nǐ shàngchyu, shr̀ tā shàngchyu?

6) Shr̀ shéi shàngchyu?

7) Shr̀ nǐ shàngchyu háishr tā shàngchyu?

8) Shr̀ nǐ gāu, shr̀ tā gāu?

9) Shr̀ Jūnggwohwà rúngyi sywé, shr̀ R̀běnhwà rúngyi sywé?

10) Shr̀ Jūnggwo rén dwō, shr̀ Měigworén dwō?

11) Nǐde bǐ shr̀ húngde, shr̀ hwángde?

12) Tā shr̀ Shàngwèi, shr̀ Jūngwèi?

b. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) Is it blue or green?

2) Is the red one expensive or the yellow one?

3) Does he want it or doesn't he?

4) Is it an antitank gun or an anti-aircraft gun?

5) Are you going to buy this one or that one?

6) Are they going to leave tonight or tomorrow morning?

7) Are you coming in or going out? Don't stand at the door.

8) Did he or his wife say that they were going to buy a new car?

9) Is your hat better looking than his or is his better looking than yours?

10) Are you going to do it or not?

Pattern 2

Alternative answers

Q:	我們明天在那兒吃飯, 在他 jyā hái 是在你 jyā?	Where are we going to eat tomorrow? At his house or at your house?
A:	Hwò 是在他 jyā, hwò 是在我 jyā, 都可以.	Either at his house or at my house. Either place is O.K.

Examples:

Q:	你們 cháng 吃魚 hái 是吃 ròu?	Do you often eat fish or meat?

A: 魚 hwò 是 ròu 我們都不吃.	We eat neither fish nor meat.
Q: 吃早飯的時候,你喜歡喝茶 hái是喝 kāfēi?	When you have breakfast, do you prefer tea or coffee?
A: 茶hwò是 kāfēi 我都喜歡.	I like both tea and coffee.

Exercise:

a. Say the following and render it into English orally:

1) Tā shwō,chyán hwòshr dūngsyi tā dōu búyàu.

2) Dzǎushang hwòshr wǎnshang tā dōu hěn máng.

3) Húngde hwòshr hwángde tāmen dōu méiyǒu.

4) Wǒ yàu yíge lánde hwòshr lyùde.

5) Tyān hǎu hwòshr tyān bùhǎu, wǒmen dōu děi chyù.

6) Nǐ syǐhwan hwòshr bùsyǐhwan dzài nèr jù, chǐng nǐ gàusung wǒ.

7) Tā chyù hwòshr búchyù, wǒ dōu chyù.

8) Hwòshr dzàijyā chǐngkè hwòshr dzài fàngwǎr chǐngkè, wǒ syàndzài hái bùjr̄dau.

9) Chìchē hwòshr dzàijùngchē, tā dōu hwèi kāi.

10) Jīntyān hwòshr míngtyān nǐ yàu dàu chéng lǐtou chyù ma?

b. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) Whether you like it or not, they are going to do it that way.

2) Either you go or I go. Someone has to go to look at it.

3) I will go either with you or with your brother as soon as I finish the work here.

4) We will go to San Francisco either tonight or tomorrow morning.

5) He does not remember whether this book was bought in Germany or in France.

6) Whether you can go or not, you must tell him before Monday.

7) Whether she is right or not, we don't know.

8) Whether it is expensive or not, they still want to buy one.

9) You can either drive my car or his car. They are both in front of this building.

10) Please tell me or him if you do not want to go there with us.

Pattern 3

Inclusive and exclusive answers

A. The use of "...lyán...都 (or 也)......"

Lyán 中國歌他都會唱.	He can even sing Chinese songs.
Lyán 他的名子你都不知道麼?	Don't you even know his name?

Examples:

1) Lyán 我的錢他都用了.	He even used (up) my money.
2) 他 lyán 看都不看.	He didn't even look.
3) 這個茶 lyán rè 都不 rè.	This tea isn't even warm.

Exercise:

a. Render the following into English orally:

1) Tā lyán jànchē dōu hwèi kāi.

2) Wǒ lyán tā jùdzai nǎr dōu bùjrdàu.

3) Wáng Syānsheng lyán yìfēnchyán dōu méigěi nèige rén.

4) Tā lyán jywéde dōu méi jywéde.

5) Tā lyán bānjyā dōu méigàusung wǒ.

6) Lyán yíge rén dōu méikànjyan.

7) Lyán yíge gēr tā dōu búhwèi chàng.

8) Lyán chá tā dōu méihē jyòu dzǒule.

9) Tā hēle wǒde chá, lyán "syèsye" dōu méishwō.

10) Wǒmen dzwótyān hěn máng, lyán chr̄fàn dōu méi shŕhou.

11) Lyán tāde háidz dōu chyùle.

12) Tyān lyán lyàng dōu méilyàng, nǐ jyòu chǐlaile.

b. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) How can you say he is my friend? I don't even know him.

2) There was not even one person there.

3) When he talks, he does not even think.

4) That bowl is not even clean. How can you use it for our guest?

5) She can speak many languages, even Chinese.

B. The pattern "..不 dàn...bìngchyě (hái or yě)..." (not only... but also...)

他不 dàn 不唱歌, bìngchyě 叫我不要唱.	Not only won't he sing, he wouldn't even allow me to sing.

Examples:

1) Hǎibyār 不 dàn lěng, bìnchyě 也太遠.	The beach is not only cold but also far away.
2) 新車不 dàn yàng 子不好看, bìngchyě 也很貴.	Not only is the style of the new car ugly, it is also very expensive.

Exercise:

a. Render the following into English orally:

1) Wáng Syānsheng búdàn dzài wǒmen sywésyàu jyāushū, bìngchyě (yě) dzài chéng lǐtou dzwòshr̀.

2) Tā búdàn búywànyi chyù, bìngchyě gàusung wǒ (yě) búyàu chyù.

3) Tāmen búdàn yǒu fángdz, bìngchyě (hái) yǒu hěn dwō chyán.

4) Tā chr̄le fàn búdàn bùgei chyán, bìngchyě (hái) shwō nèige fàngwǎrde fàn bùhǎuchr̄.

5) Nèige syáujye búdàn hwèi shwō Fàgwohwà, bìngchyě (hái) hwèi chàng Fàgwogēr.

6) Wǒmen búdàn gěile tā hěn dwō chyán, bìngchyě (hái) gěile tā hěn dwō chr̄de dūngsyi.

7) Tā búdàn bùgēn syǎuháidz wár, bìngchyě (hái) dà tāmen. Dāngrán syǎuháidz bùsyǐhwan tā.

8) Hwángde búdàn hǎukàn, bìngchyě (hái) hěn chīng.

9) Shànghǎi búdàn dìfang dà, rén dwō, bìnchyě (hái) lí Nánjīng hěn jìn. Swóyi wǒ syǐhwan jùdzai Shànghǎi.

10) Wǒ búdàn wènle tā, bìngchyě (hái) wènle tā mǔchin. Tāmen dōu shwō nǐ gěi tāmende chá buhǎuhē.

b. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) Chinese food is not only good to eat but also very expensive.

2) Miss Wang is not only my son's teacher but also my wife's best friend.

3) Not only did he introduce him to me, but he also invited us to dine in his house together.

4) Not only did they know each other, they were old friends.

5) This room is not only large but also bright.

6) Not only did he forget his books, he also forgot his hat.

7) Not only does he want to know where they live but also what they do.

8) They were not only thirsty but also hungry.

Homework

Fill in the following blanks with proper Chinese expressions:

1) Kāi chē de shŕhou yīngdāng hěn........(careful)

2) Tā.......lái. (perhaps)

3) Wǒ dzài jèr nyànshū, wǒ mǔchin hěn.......(rest assured)

4) Dzwótyan wǒ méinyànshū, jīntyan hěn.......(worried)

5) Húngde.....hwángde tā dōu busyǐhwan. (or)

6) Háilide shwěi yǒude shŕhou shr......, yǒude shŕhou shr ....(blue, green)

7) Tā mǔchin.....hwèi shwō R̀běn hwà,.....hwèi shwō Fàgwo hwà. (not only....but also.....)

8) Tā kànjyanle lǎu péngyou,.....tā hěn gāusyìng. (of course)

V. READING

A. Characters (Nos.212-218)

212.	對 对	dwèi	SV:	right, correct	對了	- that's right
			CV:	to, towards (facing)	不對	- incorrect
					對我很好	- very good to me
			IE:	Excuse me!	對不起	- excuse me!
213.	錯	tswò	SV:	be wrong	錯了一點兒	- a little bit wrong
					不錯	- not bad, not wrong
214.	句	jyù	M:	(for sentence)	一句話	- one sentence
			N:	sentence	句子	- sentence
215.	更	gèng	A:	still more, even more	更要jǐn	- even more important
					更好	- even better
					更沒意思	- even duller
216.	容	rúng	BF:	be easy	容易	- easy
217.	易	yì	BF:	be easy	真不容易	- really not easy
218.	難 难	nán	SV:	be difficult, hard	真難	- really difficult
					難吃	- unpalatable
					難看	- ugly

B. Sentences

1. 我那句話說的對不對！

2. 對了. 你對誰說的？

3. 對王先生說的.

4. 為甚麼你說話那麼小心？

5. 不小心就容易錯.

6. 為甚麼你pà說錯了？

7. Tīng的人容易生chì.

8. 你覺得說話很難麼？

9. Swéibyàn說很容易,說的沒錯很難.

10. 那位小jye swéirán難看,可是對我真好.

11. 告訴我,我作的這sye中文句子是對,是不對?

12. 他那sye朋友喜歡到外頭去玩兒,hái是喜歡在jyā裡玩兒？

13. 要不是你能唱歌畫畫兒,他們不帶你去法國.

14. 明年他也syǔ坐火車去,也syǔ開自己的

新車去.

15. 「走錯了路回得來,說錯了話,回不來.」這句話的意思你懂麼?

16. 請你放心. 那位姓王的開車很慢,也很小心.

17. Hwò 是河裡的魚,hwò 是 hái 裡的魚都行.因為甚麼魚我都喜歡吃.

18. 晚上當rán 有不少人不念書,老跑到城裡去玩兒.

19. 所有的地方都找gwo 了. 找不jáu 你的手表.

C. Story

張大有很bèn,不會說話. 有一天他 gēn 他太太出去吃飯. 他問坐在前頭的一位太太:

「Nín jyā 裡頭有 jǐ 位先生?」

那個女人生 chì 極了.

回jyā以後,他太太說:「大有,你那句話說錯了. 以後得小心.」

大有說:「Dzěn麼說tsái對ne?」

張太太說:「你應當說:Nín jyā裡有jǐ個孩子?」

又有一天,他gēn他太太出去喝酒.他看見一位小jye就問:「Nín有jǐ個孩子?」那個小jye不dàn生chì, bìngchyě hái要打他.

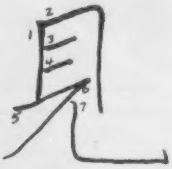
他太太說:「你說的更不對了. 下回你出去的時候,別說話了. 說錯了,聽的人就生chì.」

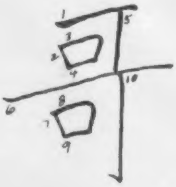
大有說:「我知道說話很難. 下回我一句話也不說了.」

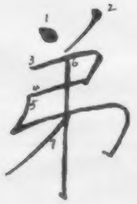
又有一天,他們去看朋友. 朋友jyā有一個男孩子. 他們離開朋友jyā的時候,他說:「要是你們小孩子sž了. 可別說我不好,因為我一句話也沒說.」

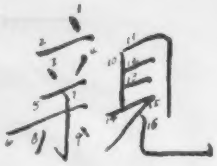
VI. WRITING

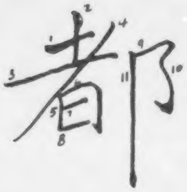
A. Writing (Characters 136-140)











B. Radicals

1. 見 (see, 147) as the word: 見 and as in: 親
2. 口 (mouth, 30) as in: 哥
3. 弓 (bow, 57) as in: 弟
4. 阝 (city, 163) as in: 都

C. Dictionary Drill

Sixty Common Chinese Radicals - "Nature" Group (cont'd)

Radical Number	Name	Radical	English Meaning	Examples
96	hsiéh-yǜ-erh	王 玉	Jade	玩 璧 球
102	t'ién	田	Field	男 略 畫
112	shíh	石	Stone	碗 碰 砦
115	hé-mù-p'áng-erh	禾	Grain	種 秀 秦
118	chú-tzù-t'óu-erh	⺮ 竹	Bamboo	笑 笨 等
120	chiǎo-szū-erh	糸 糹	Silk	紙 經 給 紫

1. Exercise: Find from dictionary the Wade-Giles romanization and meaning for the following characters:

	Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning		Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning
珍			縣		
畜			砂		
秒			琴		
答			珀		
略			當		
硯			磨		
箭			硬		
績			甸		
移			稼		
瑞			絮		
簽			稿		

2. Home Work: Find from dictionary the Wade-Giles romanization and meaning for the following characters:

	Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning		Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning
紫			縱		
築			珊		
税			昌		
班			璃		
繩			界		
範			綿		
旦			碧		
瑟			琉		
異			礁		
畔			穩		
碑			篷		

Lesson 43

1. Structural Dialogue

1.	A:	我要買 húng chì 車，你 ne?	I want to buy a red car, how about you?
	B:	我不買 húng chì 車. 我說 lyù 的好. 你說 ne?	I won't buy a red car. I say a green one is better. Do you agree?
	A:	我看這 lyàng 車很 pyányi. 你說 ne?	I think this car is very reasonable. What do you say?
	B:	Pyányi, 可是太舊. 你說 ne?	It is reasonable, but it is too old. What do you say?
	A:	舊 chì 車 tsái pyányi. 我說我們買不起新 chì 車. 你說 ne?	Only old cars are cheap. I think we can't afford to buy new cars. What do you say?
	B:	你說的很對. 就買這 lyàng 舊的 ba.	You are right. Let us buy this old one.
2.	A:	你孩子出去玩兒的時候, 你放心 ne, hái 是不放心?	Do you worry when your children go out to play?

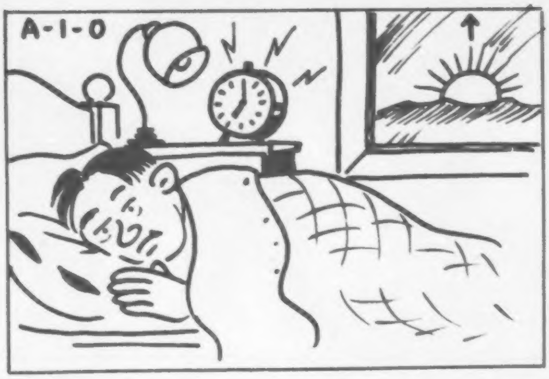
B: 我有點兒不放心.	I worry a little.
A: 你先生出去買東西的時候，你gēn他去ne, hái是不gēn他去?	Do you go with your husband when he goes shopping?
B: 我得gēn他去.	I have to go with him.
A: 他開fēijī的時候，是小心ne, hái是不小心?	Is he careful or isn't he when he flies?
B: 他當rán老是很小心，他又有孩子，又有太太.	He certainly is careful all the time, because he has children and a wife.
3. A: 我們都chwān新chènshān，你為甚麼不chwān ne?	We are all wearing new shirts, why don't you?
B: 我太太没tì我買新chènshān.	My wife didn't buy a new shirt for me.
A: 我們都chwān新syé，你為甚麼不chwān ne?	We are all wearing new shoes, why don't you?
B: 我的舊syé hái很好ne.	My old shoes are still very good.

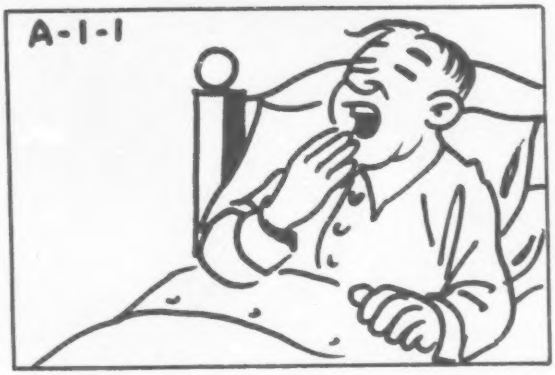
A:	我們都不吃中國飯，你為甚麼吃ne?	None of us eat Chinese food, why do you?
B:	我是中國人，當rán要吃，bìngchyě中國飯最好吃.	I am a Chinese, of course I want to eat Chinese food. Furthermore, it is most delicious.
A:	我們沒yùbei今天要念的書，你為甚麼yùbei了ne?	We didn't prepare the lesson to be studied today, why did you ?
B:	你們都不對，我不應當gēn你們學.	All of you are wrong; I shouldn't follow your example.
4. A:	你為甚麼不喜歡Hwáng美生?	Why don't you like Měishēng Hwáng?
B:	他又bǐ我pàng，又bǐ我bèn.	He is fatter and clumsier than I.
A:	他很gāu麼?	Is he very tall?
B:	又gāu又大.	He is tall and big.
A:	他太太很好麼?	Is his wife very nice?
B:	很好，又會作飯，又會作衣shang.	Very nice. She can cook and sew very well.

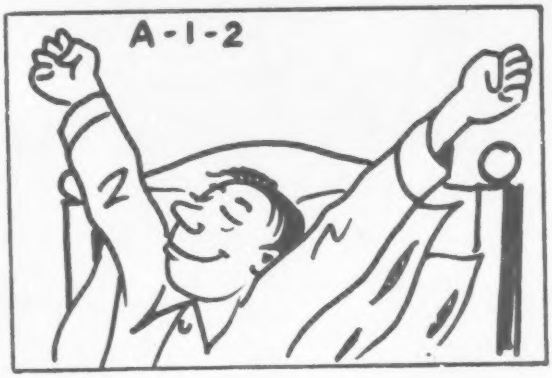
5.	A:	你們 為甚麼 買 那 lyàng 舊 chì 車 ne?	Why did you buy that old car?
	B:	因為 又 pyányi 又 好看.	Because it is both reasonable and good looking.
	A:	你們 為甚麼 jù 在 那個 地方 ne?	Why do you live at that place?
	B:	因為 那個 fáng子 又 gānjing 又 方 byan.	Because that place is both clean and conveniently located.
6.	A:	你的 新 chì 車 在 那兒 ne?	Where is your new car?
	B:	叫 我 太太 給 開 走了. 真 叫 我 不放心.	It was driven out by my wife. That really worries me.
	A:	你的 手表 在 那兒 ne?	Where is your watch?
	B:	我的 手表 叫 我 孩子 給 dyōu 了. 叫 我 很 生chì.	My watch was lost by my children. That makes me very mad.
	A:	你的 孩子 在 那兒 ne?	Where are your children?

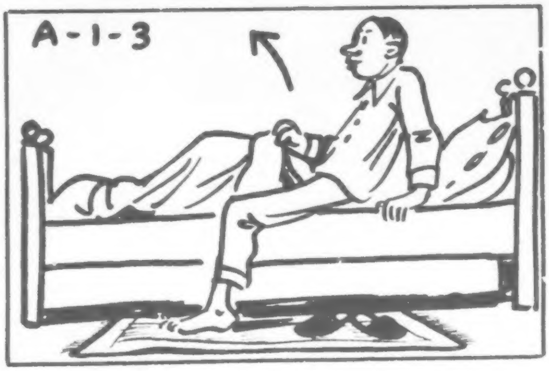
B:	叫 LǏ 先生給帶出去玩兒去了.	They were taken out to play by Mr. Lǐ.
A:	你買的 táng 在那兒 ne?	Where is the candy that you bought?
B:	都叫孩子給吃 le.	It was all eaten up by the children.
A:	你的 lǐng 帶在那兒 ne?	Where is your necktie?
B:	叫我太太給 rēng 了.	It was thrown away by my wife.
A:	LǏ 小 jye 給你寫的那 fēng syìn 在那兒 ne?	Where is that letter Miss Lǐ wrote you?
B:	叫我太太給拿走了. 他不 ràng 我給小 jye 們寫 syìn.	My wife has taken it. She doesn't allow me to correspond with girls.

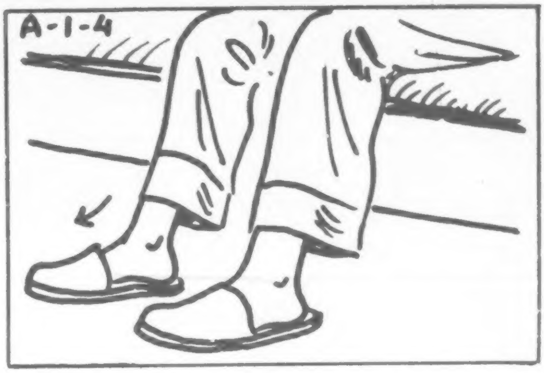
L. 43

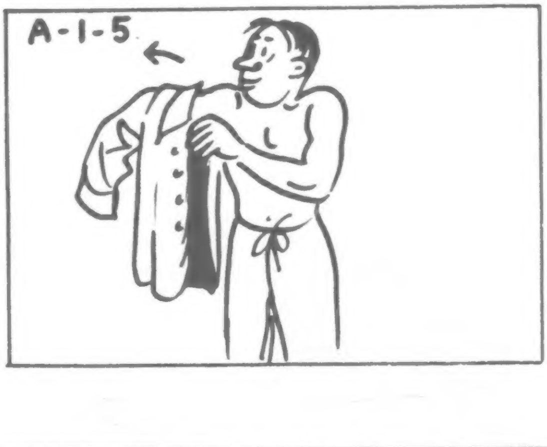


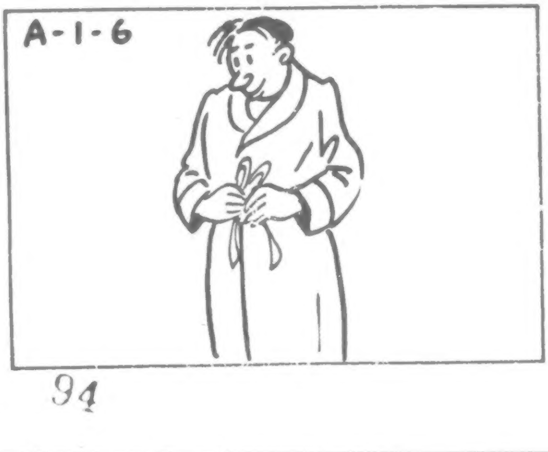












II. Basic Dialogue

1.	Bái:	Hwáng 美生 甚麼 時候 上 bān?	What time does Měishēng Hwáng go to work?
	張:	他 gēn píngcháng 作事的人 一 yàng, 八點鐘 上 bān.	He goes to work at eight o'clock, just like other ordinary working people.
	Bái:	他 甚麼 時候 起來 ne?	What time does he get up?
	張:	大 gài 是 七點鐘. 他 有 一個 nàu 鐘.	About seven o'clock. He has an alarm clock.
	Bái:	Nàu 鐘 甚麼 時候 syǎng ne?	What time does the alarm clock go off?
	張:	七點鐘. 那時候 太 yang 已 jing 出來了.	At seven o'clock. By then the sun has come out.
	Bái:	他 tīng見 nàu 鐘 syǎng 的 時候, 他 願意 起來, hái 是 不願意 ne?	Does he like to get up or not, when the alarm clock goes off?
	張:	他 當 rán 不願意. 他 hái 想 多 睡 一會兒.	Certainly he doesn't. He would like to sleep a little longer.

Bái:	是不是昨天晚上他 shwèi 的很晚 ne?	Is it because he went to bed very late last night?
張:	是 à, 他的手chyāng ràng 人拿走了，他找了半天，睡的很晚，所以他很 lèi. 在 chwáng 上打了 jǐ個 hāchyan.	Right. His pistol was taken away by somebody. He looked for it for quite a while. He slept very late, and therefore he was very tired. He yawned a few times in bed.
Bái:	是不是他睡的不夠 ne?	Is it because he didn't have enough sleep?
張:	睡的也 syǔ 不夠. 我看見他 bǎ gēbei shēn 了一 shēn, hái 想再睡一會兒.	Perhaps he didn't have enough sleep. I see him stretching his arms, wanting to get more sleep.
Bái:	他得快一點兒，要不 rán 就晚了.	He has to hurry, otherwise he will be late.
張:	他下了 chwáng, 就找他的 twōsyé.	He gets out of bed and looks for his slippers.
Bái:	他的 twōsyé 放在那兒了?	Where does he leave his slippers?

張:	放在 chwáng páng-byan兒了.	He leaves them by the bed.
Bái:	他 chwān 了 twōsyé 就作甚麼?	What does he do after he puts on the slippers?
張:	他 chwān 上 twōsyé, 就bǎ 他的 睡衣 twō 了.	He takes off his pajamas after he puts on the slippers.
Bái:	他 twō 了 睡衣 以後, 就 作 甚麼 ne?	What does he do after he takes off his pajamas?
張:	Chwān 上 了 syǐdzǎu 的 衣 shang.	He puts on his bath robe.
Bái:	他 要 syǐdzǎu 麼?	Does he want to take a bath?
張:	他 想 syǐdzǎu, 要不 rán 太 dzāng; 他 太太 不 ràng 他 上 bān.	He wants to take a bath. Otherwise he'd be too dirty and his wife would not let him go to work.
Bái:	大 gài 他 得 天天 syǐdzǎu ba.	Probably he takes a bath every day.
張:	對了. 他 說 syǐ 了 dzǎu 叫 你 覺得 很 shūfu.	Right. He says it makes you feel good after taking a bath.
Bái:	我 也 dzǔng 是 上 bān 以前 syǐdzǎu. 你 ne?	I always take a bath before going to work. How about you?

L. 43

張: 我 dzǔng 是 睡覺 以前 syǐdzǎu.	I always take a bath before going to bed.

Vocabulary

44.	chwáng	牀	N:	bed
45.	dǎ hāchyan or dǎ hāsyi	打哈欠 打哈息	VO:	yawn
46.	dàgài	大概	MA:	probably
47.	dzǔng(shr)	總(是)	A:	always (used interchangeably with lǎu(shr))
48.	gēbei	胳臂	N:	arm
49.	jyàu	叫	CV/V:	(indicates agent) by/ to cause to
50.	nàujūng	鬧鐘	N:	alarm clock
51.	ne	呢	P:	(suffix to questions)
52.	ràng	讓	CV/V:	(indicates agent) by; allow/ yield, to cause to, to let
53.	shàngbān	上班	VO:	go to class; go to work; attend class; to be at the office
54.	shēn	伸	V:	stretch
55.	shwèiyī	睡衣	N:	pajamas
56.	syǎng	響	V:	to sound
57.	syǐdzǎu	洗澡	VO:	take a bath
58.	tàiyang	太陽	N:	sun

L. 43

59.	twōsyé	拖鞋	N:	slippers
60.	yàuburán	要不然	MA:	otherwise

III. Grammar Analysis

1. Sentence suffix ne

The sentence suffix ne is often added to certain questions as follows:

1.1 Ne may be attached to either one or both of the alternatives presented in the accentuated choice-type question pattern:

Nǐ gēn péngyou chyù ne, shr̀ dz̀jǐ chyù ne?	Are you going with friends or by yourself?
Nǐ shr̀ dàu Jūnggwo chyù ne, shr̀ dàu R̀běn chyù ne?	Are you going to China or Japan?
Nǐ chyù nyànshū ne, háishr jyāushū ne?	Are you going to study or to teach?

1.2 Ne is sometimes attached to questions containing question words:

Shéi yàu lái ne?	Who is coming?
Tā shémma shŕhou lái ne?	When is he coming?
Tā yàu dzwò shémma ne?	What is he going to do?

1.3 Ne may be used in an abbreviated question where several words are omitted to avoid repetition:

Wǒmen dōu chyù. Nǐ ne?	All of us are going. How about you?
Tā yàu mǎi yige syīn chìchē. Nǐ ne?	He is going to buy a new car. How about you?
Wǒ shwō jèige hǎu. Nǐ ne?	I say this one is fine. What do you say?

Translate the following by using ne:

1) I go to bed at ten o'clock every evening. How about you?

2) What time do you go to bed and what time do you get up?

3) Are you going to work at eight or nine in the morning?

4) Who is the thinnest in your family?

5) I think there is a solution (method). What do you think?

6) He is going to help me in moving this table. Are you going to help me too?

7) All the antiaircraft guns have arrived. How about the antitank guns?

2. Co-verbs of agent, jyàu and ràng

When it is desired to point out the agent of an action, the co-verbs jyàu or ràng with the agent are used. Gĕi sometimes stands immediately before the main verb, without change in meaning. Note that sentences using these co-verbs of agent translate into the English passive, although there is no indication of this in the Chinese verbs.

Byău jyàu tā nádzŏule.	The watch has been taken by him.
Táng ràng háidz chr̄le.	The candy has been eaten by the children.
Shū jyàu tā gĕi dyōule.	The books were lost by him.
Chìchē ràng wŏ tàitai gĕi màile.	The car was sold by my wife.

Translate the following:

1) The door and the windows have been closed by me.

2) The pajamas have been washed by my wife.

3) The table has been moved upstairs by us.

4) All the wine has been drunk by him and all the meat eaten by him.

5) This story has been told by me.

6) All the blue shirts have been bought by that Airforce officer. Do you want the green ones?

7) The tea was drunk by the young officer.

3. The use of *yòu.....yòu*

Yòu.....yòu construction is used to connect two parallel elements and to stress that two states or characteristics exist at the same time.

Nèige chwán yòu dà yòu hăukàn.	That ship is both big and beautiful.
Tā syĕdz̀ syĕde yòu hău yòu kwài.	He writes both well and fast.
Nĭmen yòu shr wŏmende sywésheng yòu shr wŏmende péngyou.	You are our students and our friends.

IV. Pattern Drill

Pattern 1

Use of sentence suffix ne

我們是買 hwáng 的 ne, 是買 húng 的 ne?	Shall we buy a yellow or a red one?
他甚麼時候走 ne?	When is he leaving?
我 yǐjing 寫了 syìn, 你 ne?	I've already written a letter, how about you?

Examples:

1) 我們是坐火車 ne, 是坐 fēijī ne?	Shall we ride the train or take the plane?
2) 你想甚麼 ne?	What are you thinking about?
3) 我覺得很 gāusyìng, 你 ne?	I feel so happy, how about you?

Exercise:

a. Render the following into English orally:

1) Wǒmen sùnggei tā shémma ne?

2) Nǐ shr̀ yàu jyāushū ne, shr̀ yàu dzwò mǎimai ne?

3) Tā chàng shémma gēr ne?

4) Tā shwō tā bùnéng chyùle. Nǐ ne?

5) Tāmen yàu yíge hwángde, lyǎngge húngde. Nǐ ne?

6) Nǐ shwō wǒ shr̀ mǎi ne, shr̀ bùmǎi ne?

7) Nǐ kàn dzěmma bàn ne?

8) Nǐ jr̄dau shr̀ Jūnggwode hé dwō ne, shr̀ Měigwode hé dwō ne?

9) Nǐ fùchin shr̀ syǐhwan jèr ne, shr̀ syǐhwan Běipíng ne?

10) Jèige bǐ yǐjing hwàile. Shr̀ rēng ne, shr̀ bùrēng ne?

b. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) Do you want to buy a new or an old one?

2) Are we going to eat Chinese food or American food today?

3) I feel that driving a car is very easy. Don't you think so?

4) I like the weather here. Don't you?

5) I understand that all windows have been closed. How about the doors?

6) I don't remember whether he came in the morning or in the afternoon.

7) Shall we give the old one away or sell it?

8) Which one do you like?

Pattern 2

Co-verb of agent, 叫 and ràng

很多人都喜歡 húng 的，所以 húng 的都 ràng 人買走了．	Many people like red ones, so all the red ones have been bought up (by these people).

Examples:

1) 他母親所有的錢都叫他拿走了.	All his mother's money has been taken away by him.
2) 那本舊書 ràng 他 rēng 了．	That old book has been thrown away by him.

Exercise:

a. Render the following into English orally:

1) Wŏde nàujūng jyàu shéi nádzŏule?

2) Nĭde gēbei jyàu shéi dăle?

3) Nèige chyáu yĕ ràng wŏmende pàubīng dăhwàile.

4) Wŏmen swóyŏude jwōdz gēn yĭdz dōu ràng tāmen bāndzŏule.

5) Lyánlide dzàijùngchē jyàu páijăng kāidzŏule.

6) Nĭ shwō shémma jyàu tā gĕi dyōule?

7) Wŏmen kètīng dāngjūngde jwōdz jyàu shémma rén gĕi bāndzŏule?

8) Nèityáu yú hwàile, ràng wŏ gĕi rēngle.

9) Wŏde chá jyàu nĭ dìdi hēle. Nĭ dzài gĕi wŏ yìdyăr ba.

10) Tā lyóusyade jyòu dūngsyi dōu jyàu tāde tàitai sùnggei rén le.

b. Render the following into Chinese orally, using ràng and jyàu whenever possible:

1) All the windows in this room have been washed by him.

2) The ponton bridge over that river has been built by the engineers.

3) What did they move upstairs?

4) All children's hats were sold out by him yesterday.

5) The food we prepared for him was eaten by his hungry friend.

6) The letter I wrote him was read by all his friends.

7) The new slippers which my mother had just bought were given away by my wife.

8) Your story about him was told to him by your student.

Pattern 3

The use of "...... 又 ..... 又 ......"

那個地方又有河又有山. 真好看.	That place has both a river and a mountain. It's really beautiful.

Examples:

1) 他又 kě 又 è.	He is both thirsty and hungry.
2) 他又不吃魚又不吃 ròu.	He eats neither fish nor meat.

Exercise:

a. Render the following into English orally:

1) Tā yòu bùjr̀dau yòu búwèn.

2) Dzwò fēijī yòu kwài yòu pyányi.

3) Tā yòu méidài màudz yòu méisyǐlyǎn.

4) Tā dzǎushang chǐlai yǐhòu, yòu bùsyǐlyǎn yòu bùchr̄fàn, jyòu dàu sywésyàu láile.

5) Wǒ chǐng tā chr̄fànde shŕhou, tā yòu shwō yòu syàu, gēn píngcháng bùyiyàng.

6) Nèige syǎu wūdz yòu lěng yòu hēi, wǒ búyàu chyù.

7) Tāde chwáng yòu búgoucháng yòu bùshūfu.

8) Tā yòu bùtsūngming yòu bùkǎn nyànshū, wǒmen búsùng gěi tā syīn yīshang.

b. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) He eats well and sleeps well.

2) The slippers you gave him are comfortable and good looking.

3) His daughter is both intelligent and pretty.

4) That table is small and dirty. I don't want it.

5) Our Company Commander does not drink or smoke.

6) He has neither money nor friends.

7) His hands are big and fat.

8) That book is interesting and easy to read.

9) This canteen is too big and heavy for her.

10) It is convenient and inexpensive to ride on buses.

Homework

Fill in the following blanks with proper Chinese expressions:

1) Tā dzwòdzai jèr....., búchyù shwèijyàu. (yawn)

2) ....tāmen bujr̄dau. (probably)

3) Tyāntyān dzǎushang wǒ.......(take a bath)

4) Wǒmen jīntyande wǔfàn....yǒu yú,....yǒu ròu. (both)

5) Tāde......shr̀........(pajamas, red)

6) Jīntyan dzǎushang....méi....., swóyi tā láiwǎnle.
(alarm clock, sound)

7) .....chūlaile. (Sun) Wǒmen dàu wàitou chyù wár ba.

8) Tāde yīshang.....hěn gānjing. (always)

V. READING

A. Characters (Nos.219-226)

219.	住	jù	V: live, stay	在學校住	live in school
				住在那兒	live at where?
220.	家	jyā	N: home, family	家裡	in(one's)home
				回家	return home
				不在家	not at home
				張家	the Jāng family, the Jāngs'
221.	房	fáng	N: house, building room	房子	house
				書房	a study
				chú 房	kitchen
				找房子	look for a house
222.	屋	wū	BF: room	屋子	room
223.	南	nán	PW: South	南邊兒	the south, the south side (of)
				南方	the south
				西南	Southwest
				東南	Southeast
224.	北	běi	PW: North	西北 bù	the northwest section
				北方人	northerner

				北方菜	- northern food
				北pīng	- Peiping (Peking)
				北極	- North Pole
225.	邊 边	byān	M: side, border, part	前邊兒	- the front (side)
				後邊兒	- the rear (side)
				上邊兒	- the top, above
				下邊兒	- the bottom, below
				páng邊兒	- the side
226.	往	wàng wǎng	CV: towards (in direction of)	往東走	- go towards the east
				往西行不行	will going west be all right or not?

B. Sentences

1. 從這兒到你們家往那邊兒走?
2. 往南走,往東走,都可以.
3. 往北走,行不行?
4. 不行.把那個筆拿來.我給你畫出來.
5. 你們家住的房子大不大?
6. 又小又不太好看.
7. 屋子也不太大,可是 kètīng gēn 書房都

不小.

8. 誰告訴我孩子:「你不必學日文了,因為bǐ中文更難.」

9. 這回你打算到南方去ne, 北方去ne?

10. 你把錢放在jwō子上,不是很容易叫人拿走麼?

11. 今天早上太yang hái 沒出來我就起來了.

12. 別老坐在那兒打 hāchyan 快點兒 chwān 上睡衣去睡覺ba.

13. 請你幫我忙,找一找,這張紙上北極在那邊兒?

14. 我叫他把門關上,他老不kěn;叫人真生chì.

15. 他沒上bān, 大gài 是nàu鐘 hwài 了;要不rán 一定 bìng了.

16. 你覺得是南方菜好吃ne,是北方菜好吃ne?

17. 對不起,舊 jīn 山不在美國的東北邊兒,
在西南邊兒.

18. 有人說睡覺以前最好喝一點兒酒,很
容易就睡 jáu 了.

C. Story

有一天我到朋友家去吃飯. 他們住的地方離我們家很遠. 所以我們 píngcháng 很少到他們那兒去. 他們住的房子很大,屋子也很多. 我很喜歡他們家.

吃 wán 了飯,時候很晚了. 我出來了以後,想到火車站去,可是我不 rènshr 路,不知道 dzěn 麼走.」

我看見街上有一個人,我就去問他:「請問,到火車站去 dzěn 麼走?」他說:「往南走,不遠, dzài 往 dzwǒ 走,就是了.」我說:「syèsye!」

我 gāng 要走,他又說:「先生先生,我說的

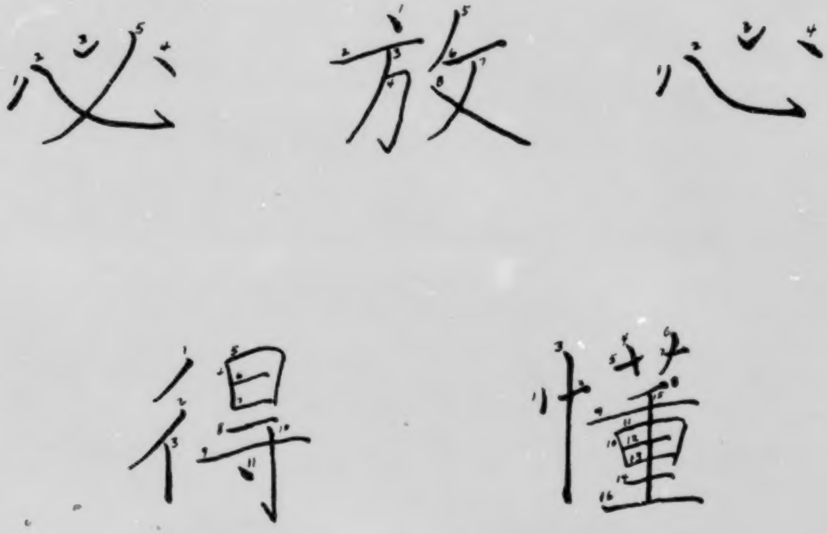
不對. 那tyáu路是去酒gwǎn兒的.」我說:「我要到火車站去.」他說:「火車站得往西, dzài往yòu, dzài往東, 就到了.」我說:「Syèsye!」

我gāng要走, 他又說:「先生, 我說錯了.」我又問:「是不是往北ne?」他說:「對了. 往北!」

我看他喝酒喝的太多了. 我又問別人. 別人說:「這兒沒有火車站!」

VI. WRITING

A. Writing (Characters 141-145)



B. Radicals

1. 心 (heart, 61) as the word: 心 & as in: 必

2. 攵 (tap, 66) as in: 放

3. 彳 (to pace, 60) as in: 得

4. 忄 (heart, 61) as in: 懂

Lesson 44

1. Structural Dialogue

1.	A:	這個賣多少錢？	How much does this sell for?
	B:	七 kwài 半.	Seven dollars and a half.
	A:	五 kwài 賣不賣?	Will you sell it for five dollars?
	B:	不賣，太少.	That's too little, I won't sell.
	A:	這六個有多 cháng?	How long are these six?
	B:	這六個大 gài 有九 Yīngtswùn cháng.	These six are about nine inches long.
	A:	那十件睡衣都太舊麼?	Are all of those ten pajamas too old?
	B:	那十件睡衣都 fēicháng 舊.	All ten of those pajamas are very old.
2.	A:	我們走 je 去好麼?	How about walking there?
	B:	走 je 太慢.	It is too slow to walk.
	A:	我們跑 je 去，好麼?	How about running there?
	B:	跑 je 太 lèi.	It is too tiring to run.
	A:	我們開 chi 車去，行麼?	How about driving there?

	B:	好, 開chi車去.	Fine. Let us drive there.
3.	A:	你不願意買這個chi車麼?	Don't you like to buy this car?
	B:	太貴，買不起.	It is too expensive and I can't afford it.
	A:	Pyányi的很容易hwài. 那個ne?	The cheap ones get broken down very easily. How about that one?
	B:	太舊，開je不放心.	It is too old and I won't feel at ease while driving.
	A:	那個húng的ne?	How about that red one?
	B:	太小，是外國車.	It is a foreign car and too small.
	A:	那個lán的ne?	How about that blue one?
	B:	太大，用的錢太多.	It is too big and costs too much money.
	A:	那個hwáng的dzěn麼yàng?	How about that yellow one?
	B:	太難看，坐在裡頭不shūfu.	It is too ugly and not comfortable inside.
4.	A:	喝酒是一件好事ching麼?	Is drinking a good thing?

	B:	喝酒不太好，可是喝一點兒 hái 可以.	It isn't very good, but mild drinking is all right.
	A:	Chōuyān, 是一件好事 ching 麼?	Is smoking a good thing?
	B:	Chōuyān, 也不太好.	No, smoking is not very good either.
	A:	念書，是一件好事 ching 麼?	Is studying a good thing?
	B:	念書最好.	Studying is the best thing.
	A:	寫字要 jǐn 不要 jǐn?	Is writing characters important?
	B:	很要 jǐn. 應當天天寫字.	Very important. It should be done every day.
	A:	你的 syìn, 可以給別人看麼?	Can you show your letters to others?
	B:	不應當 swéibyàn 給別人看.	I shouldn't show them to others indiscriminately.
5.	A:	他說話，你覺得有意思麼?	Do you think what he says is interesting?
	B:	他說話，不錯，很有意思.	What he says is not bad, and very interesting.

L. 44

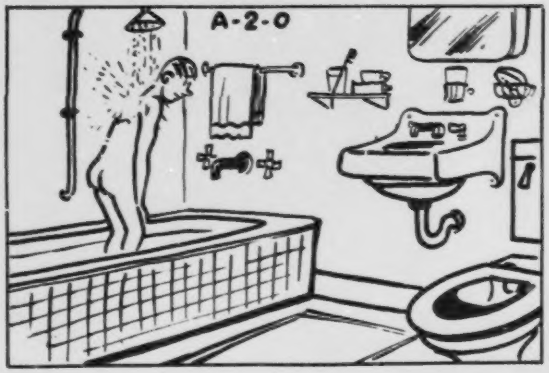
	A:	他開車，你放心麼?	Do you feel at ease about his driving?
	B:	我不放心，因為開的太快.	No, I don't, because he drives too fast.
	A:	我開車，你jāují不jāují?	Do you worry when I drive?
	B:	我一點兒也不jāují. 你開了jĭ十年了.	I don't worry a bit. You have driven for several decades.
	A:	他請你吃飯你去麼?	Would you go if he invited you to dinner?
	B:	我不去，因為他不kĕn多用錢.	I won't go because he is stingy.
	A:	我請你，去麼?	Would you go if I invited you?
	B:	一定去.	I would certainly go.
6.	A:	你為甚麼到這兒來?	Why do you come here?
	B:	我到這兒來念書.	I come here to study.
	A:	你來學說甚麼話?	What language do you come here to study?
	B:	我來學說中國話.	I come to learn to speak Chinese.

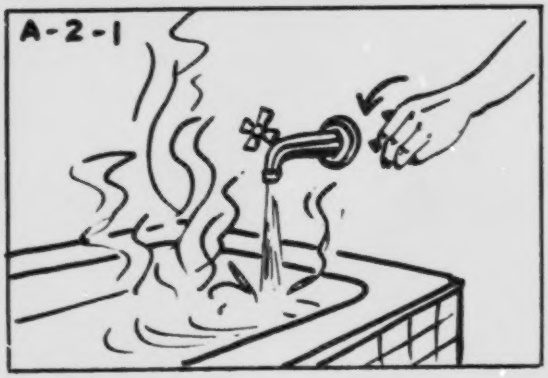
	A:	你太太到這個學校來作甚麼?	Why does your wife come to this school?
	B:	他到這個學校來幫je我.	She comes to this school to help me.
7.	A:	Hwáng 美生到城裡去作甚麼去?	What is Měishēng Hwáng going to do downtown?
	B:	他要到城裡去上bān去.	He is going to the office downtown.
	A:	到甚麼地方去上bān?	Where does he go to work?
	B:	他到鐘表pù去上bān.	He goes to work in a jewelry store.
	A:	他甚麼時候進城去?	When does he go to town?
	B:	八點鐘進城去.	He goes to town at eight.
	A:	他dzěn麼去上bān?	How does he go to the office?
	B:	他走je去上bān.	He goes to the office on foot.
8.	A:	太yang甚麼時候出來?	When does the sun rise?

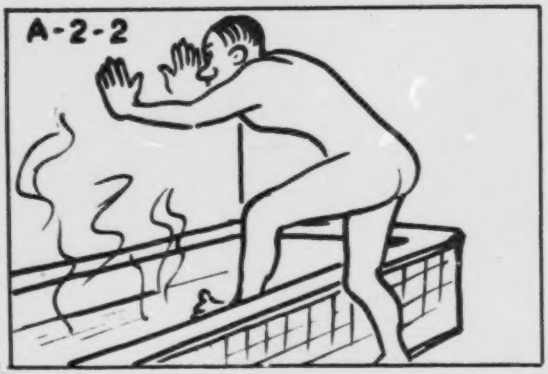
	B:	早上六點多鐘出來.	The sun rises after six o'clock.
	A:	太yang不出來的時候，多不多？	Is it often not sunny?
	B:	在這兒不太多.	Not very often here.
	A:	早上是你先起來，hái是你太太先起來？	Do you get up first, or does your wife get up first?
	B:	有的時候我先起來，有的時候我太太先起來.	Sometimes I get up first, and other times my wife gets up first.
	A:	Hwáng 美生起來的時候，太yang出來了麼？	Has the sun risen when Měishēng Hwáng gets up?
	B:	Yǐjing 出來了.	It is after the sunrise.
9.	A:	你為甚麼 syèsye 他？	Why do you thank him?
	B:	他把我的東西帶回來了，要不rán我得去拿.	He has brought my things back; otherwise I would have to go to get them.
	A:	他為甚麼 syèsye 你？	Why does he thank you?
	B:	我tì他把衣shang syǐ了，要不rán	I have washed his clothes for him, otherwise he

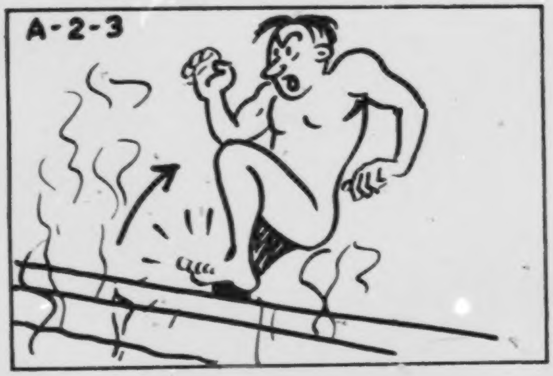
他 得 自己 syǐ.	would have to do it himself.
A: 為甚麼 他 得 今天 去 ?	Why does he have to go today?
B: 今天 買 東西 pyányi, 要不rán 東西 貴.	Things are on sale today, otherwise they will be more expensive.
A: 為甚麼 你 不去 買 ?	Why don't you go and buy some?
B: 因為 没 錢.	Because I haven't any money.

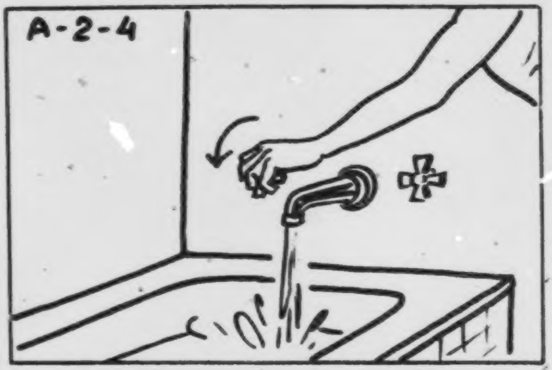
L. 44

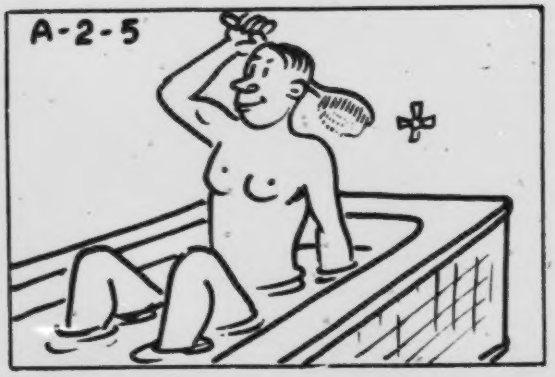


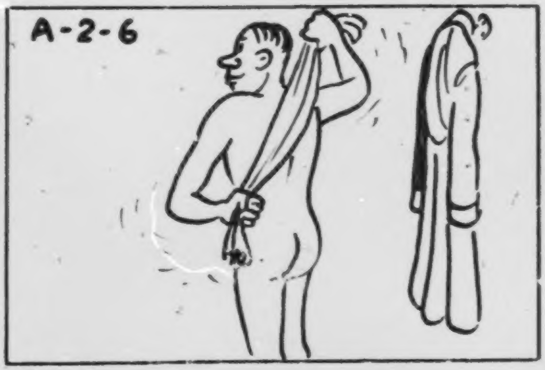




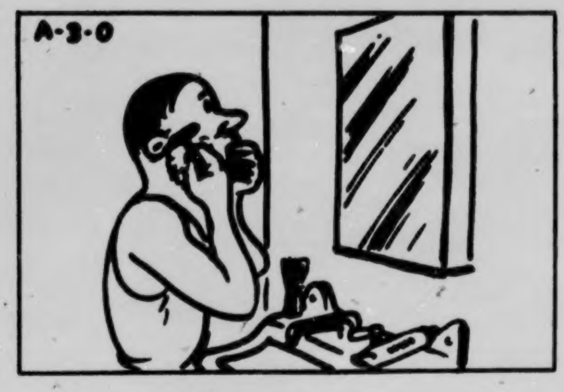




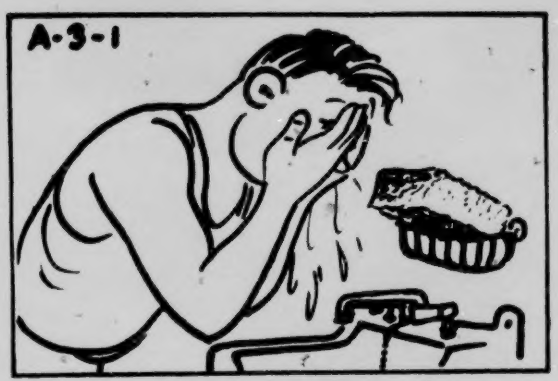




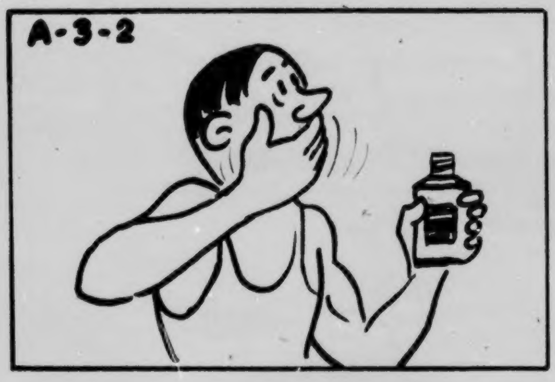
A-3-0



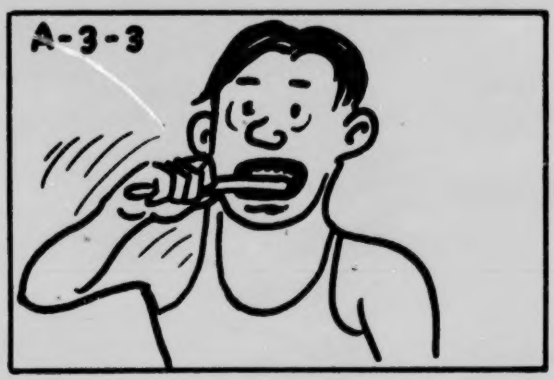
A-3-1



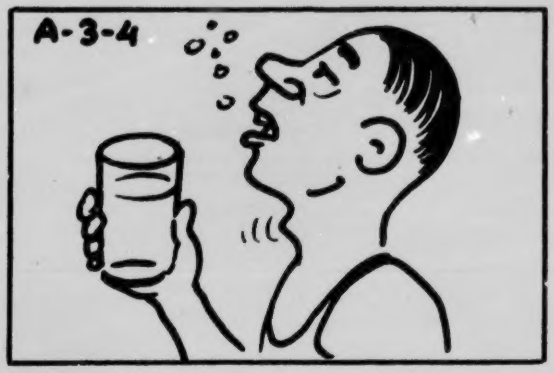
A-3-2



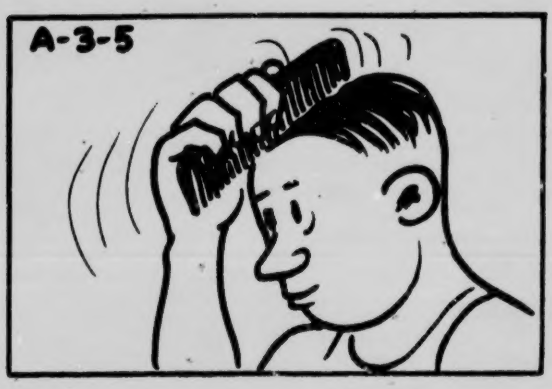
A-3-3



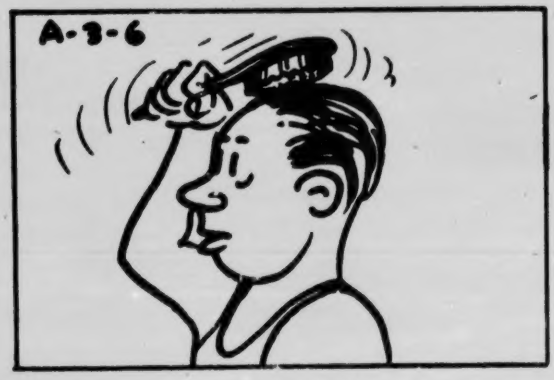
A-3-4



A-3-5



A-3-6



II. Basic Dialogue

1. Bái:	Hwáng 美生 起來以後都作甚麼事?	What are the things that Měishēng Hwáng does after he gets up?
張:	Syǐdzǎu 是他要作的 dì 一件事.	Taking a bath is the first thing he does.
Bái:	Syǐwán 了 dzǎu, 他要作甚麼?	What does he do after taking a bath?
張:	Gwā hú子.	Shaves.
Bái:	他的 hú子, 得天天 gwā 麼?	Does he have to shave every day?
張:	得天天 gwā.	Yes, he does.
Bái:	他 syǐdzǎu 的時候用 pēn子, hái是用 dzǎupén?	When he takes a bath, does he use a shower or a tub?
張:	他不太喜歡 pēn子. 他用 dzǎupén syǐ.	He doesn't like to shower too much. He takes a bath in a tub.
Bái:	Dzǎupén 裡的水 rè 不 rè?	Is the water in the tub hot or not?
張:	太 rè, 不能 syǐ. 他得出來.	It is too hot to take a bath in. Therefore he has to come out.

Bái:	他 放了 lěng 水 就 坐在 dzǎupén 裡頭 syĭ. 他 用 shwā 子 麼?	After he puts in more cold water, he sits in the tub and bathes. Does he use a brush?
張:	他 用 shwā 子 shwā. Děng 他 從 dzǎupén 裡頭 出来, 他 又 用 毛 jīn tsā.	Yes, he uses a brush. After he comes out of the tub, he uses a towel to dry himself.
Bái:	他 syĭwán 了 dzǎu 就 gwā hú 子 麼?	Does he shave after bathing?
張:	對了 .他 gwāwán hú 子 就 syĭlyǎn.	Right. He shaves and washes his face.
Bái:	他 syĭlyǎn, 用 yí 子 不用?	Does he use soap in washing his face?
張:	用 yí 子. Yí 子 就 在 lyǎnpén pángbyān 兒.	Yes, he does. The soap is on the edge of the basin.
Bái:	他 syĭwán lyǎn, 就 作 甚麼?	What does he do after washing his face?
張:	他 shwā yá.	He brushes his teeth.
Bái:	他 dzěn 麼 shwā yá?	How does he brush his teeth?
張:	他 用 yáshwā dzwǒyòu 的 shwā. Shwā yá 不應當 dzwǒyòu 的	He uses a tooth brush to brush horizontally. The tooth brush should not go

	shwā, 應當上下的 shwā.	horizontally, but vertically.
Bái:	Dzwǒyòu 的 shwā 為甚麼不對?	Why isn't it right to brush horizontally?
張:	因為把 dzāng 的東西 shwā 到 yá 的當中去了.	Because this will brush the food remnants in between the teeth.
Bái:	Shwāwán 了, hái 得 shù kǒu ba?	He has to rinse his mouth after brushing his teeth, doesn't he?
張:	對了. Shùwán 了 kǒu 就得快一點兒 shū tóu.	Right. After he rinses his mouth, he immediately combs his hair.
Bái:	用甚麼 shū tóu?	What does he use to comb his hair?
張:	用 shū 子. Shūwán 了又用 shwā 子 shwā-shwa.	He uses a comb. He brushes his hair with a brush after combing.
Bái:	他要去上 bān 麼?	Is he going to the office?
張:	是的. 他作事很慢, 所以我 kǔngpà 他要晚了.	Yes. He works very slowly, so I am afraid that he will be late.

Vocabulary

61.	fàng	放	V:	let go of, release
61.1	fàng shwěi	放水	VO:	release (water from the tub)
62.	gwāhúdz	刮鬍子	VO:	shave (one's beard)
62.1	húdz	鬍子	N:	beard, whiskers, mustache
63.	máujīn	毛巾	N:	towel
64.	pēndz	噴子	N:	sprayer, shower
65.	shūdz	梳子	N:	comb
66.	shū tóu	梳頭	VO:	comb hair
67.	shù kǒu	漱口	VO:	rinse the mouth, gargling
68.	shwādz	刷子	N:	brush
69.	shwā yá	刷牙	VO:	brush teeth
70.	(syǐ) dzǎufáng	(洗)澡房	N:	bathroom
71.	(syǐ) dzǎupén	(洗)澡盆	N:	bath tub
72.	(syǐ) lyǎnpén	(洗)臉盆	N:	wash basin
73.	tsā	擦	V:	rub (face), polish (shoes), wipe (dishes, floor)
74.	yáshwā	牙刷	N:	toothbrush
75.	yídz	胰子	N:	soap
	or féidzàu	肥皂		

III. Grammar Analysis

1. The subject of a sentence

While the subject of a Chinese sentence is most commonly a noun, the following situations are also common:

1.1 Number measure noun:

Yíge syǎu, yíge dà.	One is small and the other one is big.
Yíge yǒuchyán, yíge méiyou chyán.	One is rich and the other one isn't.
Sz̀kwai chyán tài gwèi.	Four dollars is too expensive.
Sānwei dōu chyù.	All three are going.

1.2 Specifier with or without number measure and noun:

Jèige shr̀ húngde, nèige shr̀ hwángde.	This is red, but that is yellow.
Jèige nàujūng hǎukàn, nèige nàujūng bùhǎukàn.	This alarm clock is good looking, but that one isn't.
Jèi yíge hǎu, nèi lyǎngge bùsyíng.	This one is good, but those two won't do.
Nèi lyǎngshwāng twōsyé tài dwǎnle.	Those two pairs of slippers are too short.
Nà hǎujíle!	That is wonderful!

1.3 Verbal noun:

Dzǒuje tài màn.	Walking is too slow.

Kànje rúngyi, dzwòje nán.	It looks easy, but it is difficult to do.

1.4 Stative verb:

Tài dà bùsyíng, tài syǎu yě bùsyíng.	Too big or too small, both won't do.
Tài gwèi bùrúngyi mài.	Too expensive would make it not easy to market.

1.5 Verb object:

Chànggēr jēn yǒuyìsz.	Singing is very interesting.
Syědz̀ hěn nán; shwōhwà rúngyi.	It is difficult to write, easy to speak.
Kāichē fēicháng nán sywé ma?	Is driving very hard to learn?

1.6 Noun clause:

Wǒ gěi chyán, yě syíng.	It will also be all right for me to pay.
Nǐ shwō gùshr, yě hǎu.	It is also all right for you to tell a story.
Nǐ shwō Jūnggwo hwà kéyi, nǐ shwō Yīngwén bùkéyi.	It is permitted for you to speak Chinese, not to speak English.
Nǐ gěi wǒ chyán yě syíng, tā gěi wǒ chyán yě syíng.	It will be all right if either you or he pays me.

L. 44

Translate the following:

1) It is comfortable to take a bath in a tub.

2) Teeth brushing, shaving, face washing, and hair combing altogether take about half an hour.

3) Bathing takes twenty minutes.

4) Bathing every day is very important.

5) Going east or going south will both do.

6) Either you come to my place or I go to your place, both are convenient.

It is quite common for a Chinese sentence not to have a topic or a subject. When a thing has already been mentioned in the previous sentence, the subject or object referring to it is often omitted. For example:

Lǐ Syānsheng tsúng Měigwo dàu Jūnggwo chyù. (Lǐ Ss.)Dàule Shànghǎi, (Lǐ Ss.) syà chwán yǐhòu, (Lǐ Ss.) kànjyàn tāde yíwèi Jūnggwo péngyou, (péngyou) shr̀ Jāng Syǎuyīng, Jāng Syānsheng.

In order to comprehend the full meaning of the sentences, one must figure out what the topic of each sentence is.

2. Purpose of coming or going and to show the purpose of the verb

In a Chinese sentence with the verb lái (come) or chyù (go), a purpose may be expressed in any of the three constructions:

2.1 Tā dàu jyēshang chyù mǎi shwèiyī.	He goes to town to buy pajamas.
2.2 Tā dàu jyēshang mǎi shwèiyī chyù.	He goes to town to buy pajamas.

2.3 Tā dàu jyēshang chyù mǎi shwèiyī chyù.	He goes to town to buy pajamas.

Translate the following:

1) Where are you going to take a bath?

2) I am hungry. I am going home to eat.

3) Mrs. Lǐ is going to the kitchen to cook.

4) He is going to his home country to teach.

5) I am going to my hotel to sleep.

6) Mr. Wáng is going to the airport to board an airplane.

7) That young officer has come to San Francisco to buy Chinese shoes.

IV. Pattern Drill

Pattern 1

The subject of a sentence

A. Number measure noun (or number measure):

兩張紙不夠,十張也 syǔ 夠了.	Two sheets of paper are not enough. Perhaps ten will be enough.

Examples:

1) 五把 yáshwā dzěn 麼行 a! 我們有六位 kè 人.	How can five toothbrushes do? We have six guests.
2) 六位 kè 人都用一個 dzǎufáng 麼?	Do all six guests use the same bathroom?
3) 三位用有 dzǎupén 的,三位用就有 pēn 子的.	Three persons will use the one with a tub. Three (others) will use one with only a shower.
4) 太太買了兩 kwài 毛 jīn. 一 kwài 是 húng 的,一 kwài 是 lyù 的.	The lady bought two towels. One was red, the other was green.
5) Syǐlyǎnpén 上 byān 兒放着三 kwài yí 子. 一 kwài 大,一 kwài 小,一 kwài 不大也不小.	There are three pieces of soap above the wash basin. One piece is big, another is small, the third one is neither large nor small.

Exercise:

Say the following sentences and render them into English orally:

1) Yìbǎ shwādz syīn, yìbǎ shwādz jyòu.

2) Yíge wǎn shr̀ hēchá yùngde, yíge wǎn shr̀ shùkǒu yùngde.

3) Lyǎngge dzǎupén bāndelyǎu, sżge dzǎupén bānbulyǎu.

4) Dìyījyàn shwèiyī mǎide pyányi, dièrjyàn tài gwèile.

5) Yishwāng twōsyé yòu hǎukàn yòu pyányi, kěshr ráng rén mǎile.

6) Yìbǎ shr̀ Yīng chř, yìbǎ shr̀ Jūnggwo chř. Nǐ shr̀ yàu Yīng chř ne, shr̀ yàu Jūnggwo chř ne?

B. Specifier with or without number, measure, and noun:

這兩lyàng車往東開.那兩lyàng往西開.那是甚麼意思?	What is the meaning(of this)? Two of the vehicles are going eastward and two are going westward.

Examples:

1) 這幾張 chwáng 有 jǐ Yīng chř cháng?	How many feet long are these beds?
2) 這兩位做事不dàn小心, bìngchyě快的 lìhai.	These two persons are not only careful in their work but also fast.
3) 那件 dzāng?那件 gānjing?	Which piece is dirty, which clean?
4) 那不要jǐn!沒有 shū子可以用 shwā子 shū頭.	That doesn't matter. If you don't have a comb, you can use a brush to fix your hair.

Exercise:

Orally fill in the following blanks with the required elements as indicated below:

1) (SP-NU-M-N) lǎu bugwā húdz, swóyi tāmende húdz chángjíle.

2) (SP-NU-M-N) syĭwánle dzău méifàng shwĕi, mŭchin dă tāmenle.

3) (SP-NU-M) jyàu lyóudànpàu, (SP-NU-M) jyàu jànfángpàu.

4) (SP-NU-M) shr̀ Jūngwen bàu, wàigworén dāngrán kànbudŭng.

5) (SP-M) shr̀ shr̀jyeshang dzwèi gāude shān. Nĭ lyán jèige shān yĕ méitīngshwōgwo ma?

6) (SP-M) bĭ (SP-M) yŏuyìszde dwō, nĭ sùnggei tā jèibĕn ba.

7) (SP) jyàu shémma? Nĭmen sywéle lyănggebàn ywède Jūngwén le, hái méisywégwo jèige dz̀ ma?

8) Nĭ yi shwō hĕn máng, tā jyòu tì nĭ dzwò. (SP) kĕ jēn hău!

C. Verbal noun:

看 je fēicháng chígwài	seemingly extremely strange

Examples:

1) 看 je 不好看, dàije shūfu 極了.	It doesn't look good, but it feels good when I wear it..
2) 坐 je 沒有站 je 那麼 lèi.	Sitting is not as tiring as standing.
3) 寫 bĭ 說 難多了. 中國字 不大好寫.	Writing is much harder than speaking. Chinese characters are hard to write.

Exercise:

Say the following sentences and render them into English orally:

1) Dzǒuje dzǒuje, yìhwěr jyòu dàu jyā le.

2) Pǎuje chyù dzwèi hǎu. Yàuburán pùdz gwānle mén jyòu mǎibujáule.

3) Tàitai shwō: "Byé chǐng rén bāngmáng. Náje bútài jùng."

4) Jèijyàn yīshang búgwèi. Chwānchilai yòu chīng yòu shūfu.

5) Jèiwei syānsheng jyāushū jyāude kwàijíle. Yùbeichilai kě jēn bùrúngyi.

6) Kànje gēn nèige bùyíyàng, yùngchilai chàbudwō (not much difference).

D. Stative Verb

Pàng 不好看, shòu 也不好看.	It doesn't look nice to be either fat or thin.

Examples:

1) 有錢不一定好. 很多有錢的人 chángcháng 不 gāusyìng.	It isn't necessarily good to be rich. Many rich people are often unhappy.
2) 生chì 對你自己不好. 你真 bèn.	Anger is not good for you. You are really foolish!
3) Hwò 是 gāu, hwò 是 ǎi 都不要jǐn. Tsūng 明就行了.	It doesn't matter whether you are tall or short as long as you are clever.
4) Kě 了喝水, è 了吃飯. 這句話多 bèn 的人都明bai.	You drink when you are thirsty and eat when you are hungry. Even a stupid person can understand this.

135

Exercise:

Render the following sentences into Chinese orally, using stative verbs as subjects:

1) "Old" and "young" are, of course, not the same.

2) Sickness is not necessarily caused by over-eating.

3) Whether the food is delicious or tasteless makes no difference to the children.

4) Whether it is useful or not is not important.

5) Being angry too often can make one grow old quickly.

6) Being inexpensive does not necessarily mean that the quality is bad.

E. Verb object:

開 fēijī bǐ 開車更得小心.	It's even more necessary to be careful when operating a plane than when driving a car.

Examples:

1)	Tsā hēibǎn 是誰的事ching?	Whose job is it to clean the blackboard?
2)	Syǐlyǎn, shùkǒu, shū 頭 一gùng 用了一kè 鐘.	He took a total of 15 minutes to wash his face, rinse his mouth, and comb his hair.
3)	打jàng 能 ràng 這個 shr̀jyè 更好一點兒麼?	Is it possible to make this world even better by fighting a war?

Exercise:

Render the following questions into Chinese orally:

1) Is writing a book as easy as composing a song?

2) Is tooth brushing something a child should do every morning?

3) Does shaving take more time than hair combing?

4) If yawning makes your wife angry, what can you do?

5) Did your teacher tell you that studying Chinese is the most interesting thing in the world?

6) Does every infantryman think that firing a rifle is really fun?

F. Noun Clause:

兒子 ti你把 dzǎupén syǐ gānjing,不好麼?	Isn't it good that your son has cleaned the bath tub for you?

Examples:

1) 你給我 tsātsa這 shwang syě,行不行?	Would it be all right if you shined this pair of shoes for me?
2) 小孩兒說話,最有意思.	Children's talk is most interesting.
3) 兒子打父親,不是一件 píngcháng 的事.	A son beating his father is not an ordinary occurance.
4) 男人 dài 女人的 màu 子,真 chígwài.	It is really strange to see a man wearing a lady's hat!
5) 你們坐 gūnggùng-chì 車去,好一點兒 ba.	Wouldn't it be nicer if you went by bus?

Exercise:

Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) It would be better for him to stay in the hotel.

2) It is very impolite for me to tell your father to shave.

3) It is easy for him to carry those brushes because he has strong arms.

4) Is it permissible for you to use an alarm clock in that building?

5) Is it all right for the children to go to the seaside with me now?

6) Is it all right for a captain to tell the colonel not to worry?

Pattern 2

Three variant forms of the same pattern for expressing the purpose of coming or going:

A:	他到 dzǎu 房去放水了.	He went to the bathroom to fill up the tub.
B:	他到 dzǎu 房放水去了.	same as above
C:	他到 dzǎu 房去放水去了.	same as above

Examples:

1)	A:	工 bīng 到 hǎi 邊兒 來 dā fúchyáu.	The engineer troops came to the beach to build pontons.
	B:	工 bīng 到 hǎi 邊兒 dā fúchyáu 來.	same as above
	C:	工 bīng 到 hǎi 邊兒 來 dā fúchyáu 來.	same as above

2) A: 有的人不要到山上去畫畫兒.
Some people do not want to go to the hills to paint.

B: 有的人不要到山上畫畫兒去.
same as above

C: 有的人不要到山上去畫畫兒去.
same as above

3) A: Jàu中shr̀到Táiwān不是去做事的麼?
Didn't Sergeant Jau go to Taiwan to work?

B: Jàu中shr̀到Táiwān不是做事去的麼?
same as above

C: Jàu中shr̀到Táiwān不是去做事去的麼?
same as above

Exercise:

Render each of the following phrases into Chinese orally, using the three variant forms shown in the examples:

1) go upstairs to ask the Army Commander

2) go to the front of the room to close the window

3) come to this place to join the Air Force

4) came to the United States to learn how to use atomic energy (use shr̀....de pattern)

5) went to the train station to meet our Battalion Commander

Homework

(Pattern Review)

Repeat the following questions and answer them orally:

1) Dzăushang nĭ yì chĭlai jyòu syĭlyăn, shùkŏu ma?

2) Jyòushr hĕn máng nĭ yĕ syān shūle tóu tsái shàngbān ma?

3) Nĭ yŏubìngde shŕhou gwā bugwā húdz?

4) Jīntyan dzăushang nĭ shr̀ chr̄fàn yĭchyán shwāde yá,
háishr chr̄fàn yĭhòu shwāde yá?

5) Nĭ mĕityan shù jĭtsz̀ kŏu? Mĕitsz̀ shùkŏu shù jĭfēn jūng?

6) Nĭ yùnggwo méiyùnggwo yáshwā shwā syé?

7) Yùng pēndz syĭdzău yŏu méiyou yùng dzăupén némma shūfu?

8) Syĭdzăude máujīn bĭ syĭlyănde máujīn dà yìdyăr háishr
dàde dwō?

9) Nĭ syĭhwan busyĭhwan syĭle dzău bufàngshwĕi, butsā
dzăupén de rén?

10) Mĕigwo yŏu méiyou lyán syĭlyănpén dōu méiyou de fángdz?

V. READING

A. Characters (Nos. 227-233)

227.	已	yǐ	BF:	already	已經 - already 已經看了 - already seen (it)
228.	經 経	jīng	BF: BF:	(已經) already (經過) pass through, by, via	早已經吃了 - (I) ate long ago 經過那個城 - pass through that city
229.	送	sùng	V:	send, deliver (things); escort; see off; present or give (as a gift)	送朋友 - seeing a friend off 送給你 - give (it) to you 送他回家 - see him home 送一送 - see one (to the door, to one's home, etc.)
230.	過 过	gwò	V: P:	pass, exceed, cross over (experiential suffix to verbs)	過來 - come over here 過去 - go over there 七點過五分 - five past seven 你吃過飯了麼？ - have you eaten?
231.	街	jyē	N:	street	大街 - main street 上街 - go to the shopping district

					街上 - on the street, downtown
232.	鋪 舖	pù	BF:	store, shop	鋪子 - shop, store
232.	館 舘	gwǎn	BF:	restaurant, bar, tea-house, hotel, etc.	飯館兒 - restaurant 酒館兒 - bar, wine shop 茶館兒 - tea house lyǔ館 - hotel

B. Sentences

1. 酒館兒的飯貴，飯館兒的酒貴.
2. 是的. 所以我沒在酒館兒吃過飯.
3. 我們街上的飯館兒有的不可以賣酒.
4. 你要送給王小姐的書送去了麼?
5. 已經送去了. 昨天我從書鋪買來以後就送去了.
6. 坐船過河得半個鐘頭，船走的很慢.
7. 那位姓方的請我喝茶，你能送我去麼?
8. Gūnggùng chì 車兩點過十分經過城裡的大街.
9. 這位新先生 gāng 到學校，請幫他找 lyǔ 館.

10. 中國人 cháng 說：「那兩個人很好, gēn
魚在水裡一 yàng.」

11. 我到這兒來的 dì 一天一句中文都不
懂.

12. 弟弟要 syǐdzǎu. 哥哥給他放水, yùbei
毛 jīn, 後來給他 shū 頭.

13. 他們是南方有錢的人. 家裡的房子
大極了, 有 jǐ 十個屋子.

14. 要是你想上街, 應當往北走, 過四五
tyáu 街就到了.

C. Story

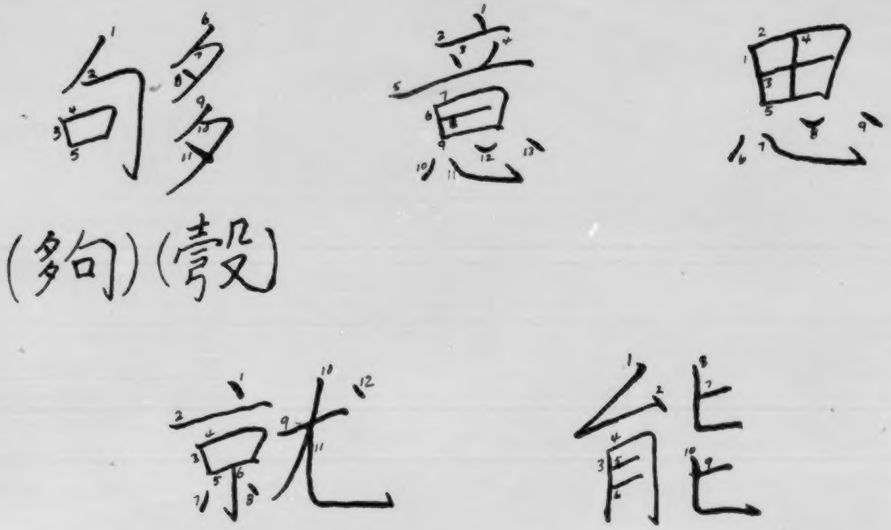
王家住在張家 dzwǒ 邊兒. 王太太就有一個男孩子, 叫王就一. 張太太也有一個男孩子, 叫張沒二. 這兩位母親都很 ài 他們的兒子. 甚麼都 tì 兒子作. 老帶 je 他們, 不放心叫他們離開. 有一天, 一位老先生對這兩位母親說：「就一 gēn 沒二已經大了. 應

當叫他們自己到外頭去看看這個shr̀jyè.」

第二天,王太太gēn張太太叫他們的兒子一kwài兒進城. 王就一,張沒二真是gāusyìng極了. 他們跑到城裡去,先在一個小飯館兒吃點心. 後來又到書鋪買紙買筆. 他們覺得tsái玩兒了一會兒, 天已經hēi了. 他們要回家,可是不rèn得路. 沒法子,他們就站在街上kū. 有一個人經過,就對王就一說:「你不必kū,我可以送你們回家. 你住在甚麼街?」就一說:「我住在沒二家dzwǒ邊兒.」那個人又問沒二:「你住在那兒?」沒二說:「我住在就一家yòu邊兒.」

VI. WRITING

A. Writing (Characters 146-150)



B. Radicals

1. 夕 (evening, 36) as in: 夠, 够

2. 殳 (pole-ax, kill, 79) as in: 彀

3. 心 (heart, 61) as in: 意, 思

4. 尤 (lame, crooked, 43) as in: 就

5. 月 (flesh, 130) as in: 能

Lesson 45

1. Structural Dialogue

1.	A:	你在 fēijīchǎng 都看見甚麼了?	What did you see at the airport?
	B:	Fēijī, 人, chì 車.	Airplanes, people, and cars.
	A:	Fēijī 都往那兒 fēi?	Where were the airplanes heading for?
	B:	有的到 fēijīchǎng 來, 有的從 fēijīchǎng 走.	Some were coming into the airport, and some were leaving the airport.
	A:	人都往那兒走?	Where were the people going?
	B:	有的到 fēijī 上去, 有的從 fēijī 上下來.	Some were going into the airplanes and some were coming down from the airplanes.
	A:	Chì 車都往那兒開?	Where were the cars going?
	B:	有的到 fēijīchǎng 來, 有的從 fēijīchǎng 走.	Some came into the airport and some were leaving the airport.
2.	A:	我們明天到飯館兒去吃飯都從那兒去?	From where will we be going to the restaurant to eat tomorrow?

	B:	我從家裡去.	I will be going from home.
	A:	Wáng 先生 ne?	How about Mr. Wáng?
	B:	他從學校去.	He will go from the school.
	A:	Lǐ 先生 ne?	How about Mr. Lǐ?
	B:	他從 lyǔ 館去.	He will be going from the hotel.
	A:	Lyóu 先生 ne?	How about Mr. Lyóu?
	B:	他從他鋪子去.	He will be going from his store.
3.	A:	Wáng 先生，你從東邊兒來的時候，看見一lyàng 又大又 cháng 的 gūnggùng-chì 車沒有?	Mr. Wáng, did you see a big and long bus when you were coming from the east?
	B:	我沒看見.	No, I didn't.
	A:	Lǐ 先生，你從南邊兒來看見了沒有?	Mr. Lǐ, did you see it as you were coming from the south?
	B:	沒有.	No, I didn't.
	A:	Lyóu 中wèi，你看見了 ba?	You must have seen it, didn't you, Lt. Lyóu?

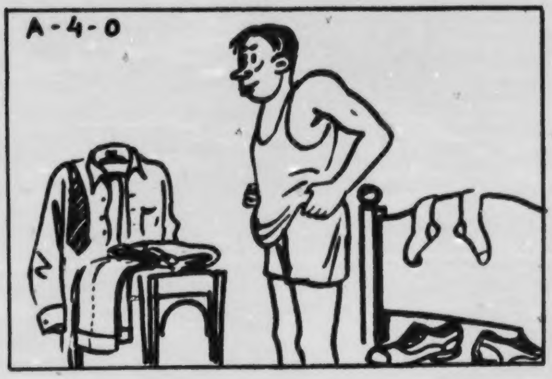
	B:	我從北邊兒來，也沒看見.	I came from the north, and didn't see it either.
	A:	LǏ小jye, 你從西邊兒來，一定看見了.	You must have seen it as you came from the west, Miss LǏ.
	B:	對了. 我看見了. 那lyàng gūnggùng-chì車多cháng多大a!	Right, I saw it. That bus was really big and long!
4.	A:	你從甚麼時候起不chōuyān了?	When did you stop smoking?
	B:	我從上lǐbài起就不chōuyān了.	I have stopped smoking since last week.
	A:	你要從甚麼時候起就不喝酒了呢?	When will you stop drinking?
	B:	我打swan從下lǐbài起就不喝酒了.	I plan to stop it from next week on.
	A:	從下lǐbài起，你真可以不喝酒麼?	Can you really stop drinking from next week on?
	B:	我真不知道.	That I really don't know.
5.	A:	你從那兒到這兒來的?	From where did you come to this place?
	B:	我從日本來的.	I came from Japan.

	A:	你從這兒到那兒去?	Where do you go from here?
	B:	我從這兒到Nyǒuywō去.	I am going to New York from here.
6.	A:	昨天yè裡有一個人到我屋子裡來了. 我dyōu了好syē東西了.	Someone came into my room last night. I lost quite a few things.
	B:	他從甚麼地方進來的?	Which way did he get in?
	A:	我想他從chwānghu進來的.	I think he came through the window.
	B:	他從甚麼地方出去的?	Which way did he get out?
	A:	我想他從這個門出去的.	I think he went out through the door.
7.	A:	你到舊jīn山的中國城去過麼?	Have you been to San Francisco Chinatown?
	B:	去過. 有一tyáu街從南到北都是中國鋪子, 有一tyáu街從東到西都是中國飯館兒.	Yes, I have. There is a south-north street lined with Chinese stores, and there is an east-west street lined with Chinese restaurants.

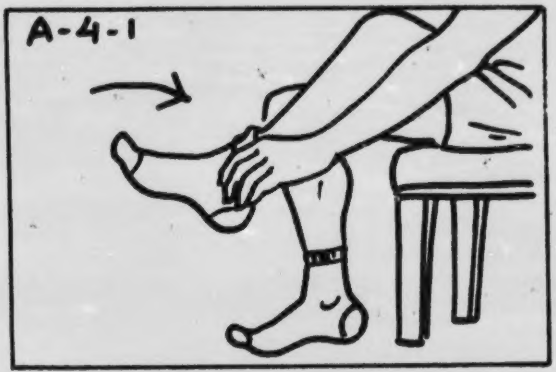
A:	你進去吃飯了麼?	Did you go in to eat?
B:	進去了. 人真多. lóu上 lóu下 都是中國人.	Yes, I did. There were really a lot of people. Both upstairs and downstairs were full of Chinese.
A:	他們都用kwài子麼?	Did they all use chopsticks?
B:	對了, 都用kwài子.	That's right. They all used chopsticks
A:	他們那兒天天都有那麼多人麼?	Do they have so many people over there every day?
B:	他們說從Lǐbai一到Lǐbai四人没有那麼多, 從Lǐbai五到Lǐbai天他們dzǔng是忙的lìhai.	They said that they didn't have so many people from Monday to Thursday, but they were always very busy from Friday to Sunday..

L. 45

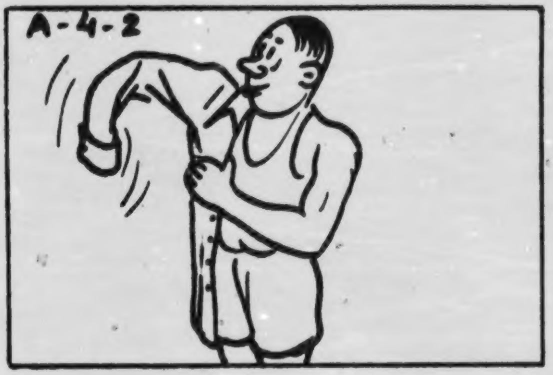
A-4-0



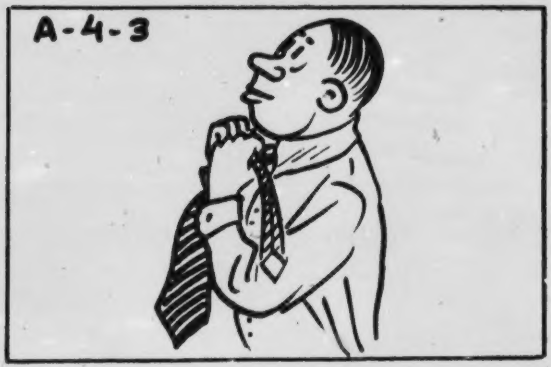
A-4-1



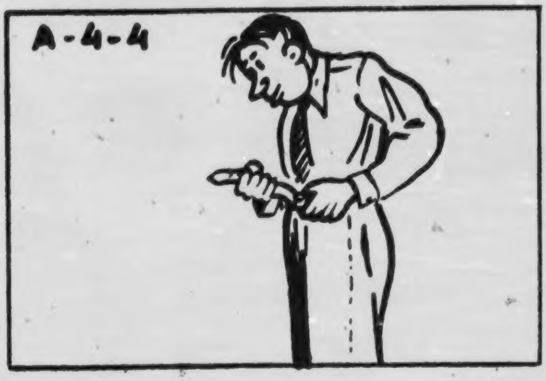
A-4-2



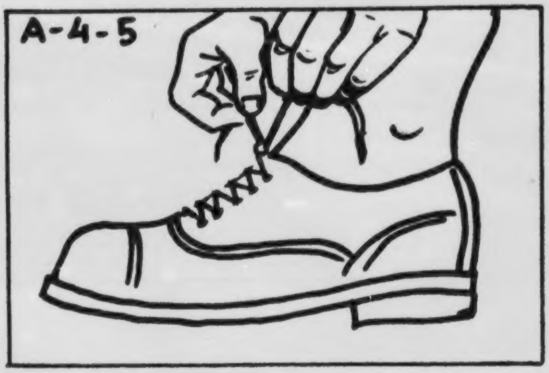
A-4-3



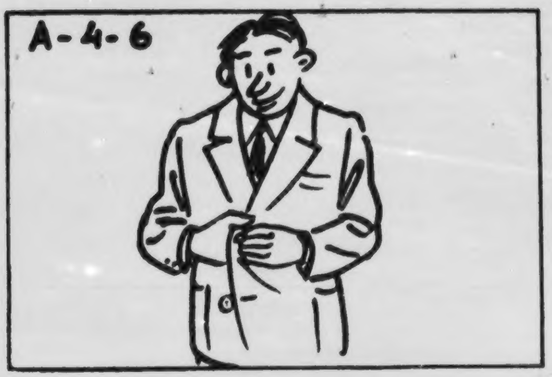
A-4-4



A-4-5

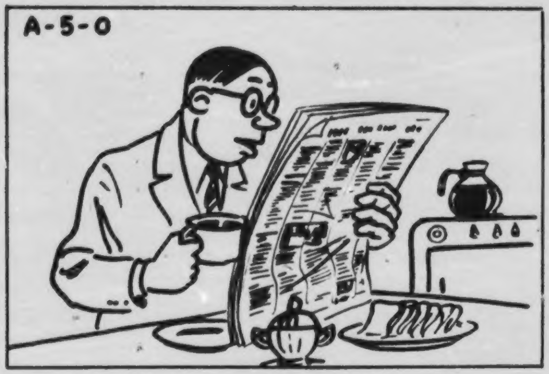


A-4-6

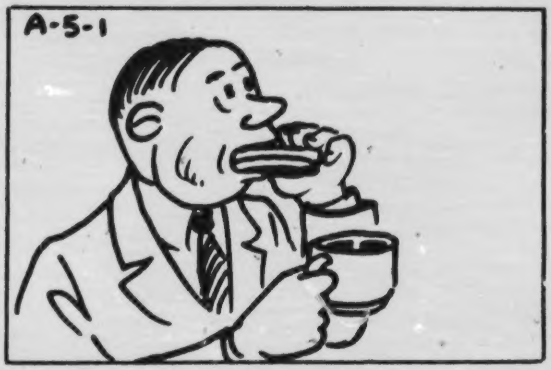


L. 45

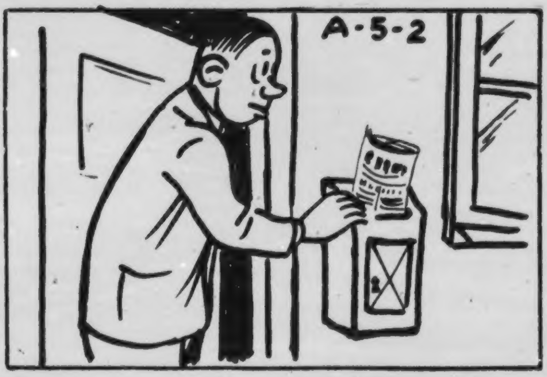
A-5-0



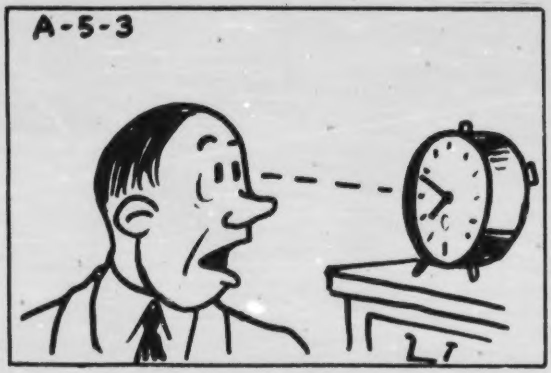
A-5-1



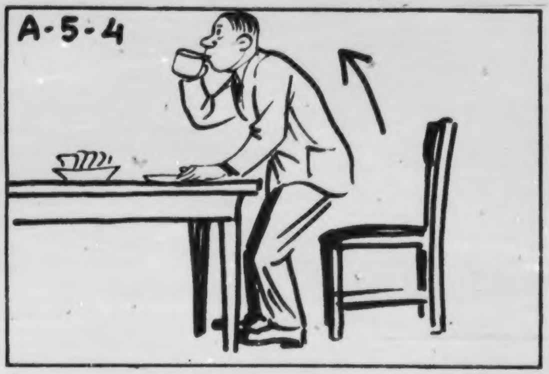
A-5-2



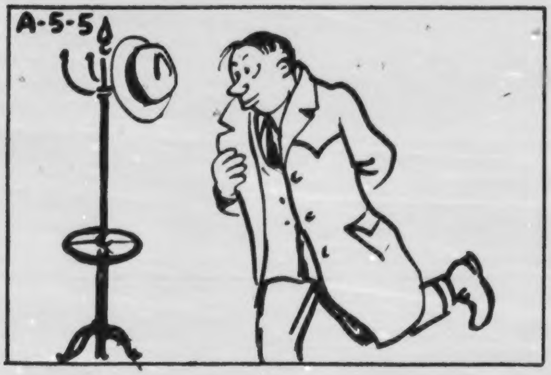
A-5-3



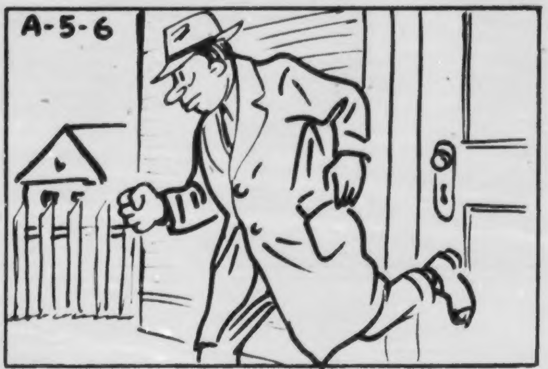
A-5-4



A-5-5



A-5-6



II. Basic Dialogue

Bái:	Hwáng 美生 syǐwán了 lyǎn, 就得走了 ba?	Mĕishāng Hwáng will have to leave after he has washed his face, won't he?
張:	他得回到 wò房 chwān 衣shang.	He will have to go to the bedroom to put on clothes.
Bái:	他 chwān dwǎn wà子麼?	Does he wear socks?
張:	對了. Chwān 好了 wà子, 就 chwān kù子, chènshān.	Yes. After he puts on his socks, he puts on his pants and shirt.
Bái:	他 jì pí 帶麼?	Does he wear a belt?
張:	對了, 也 jì lǐng 帶.	Yes, and he also wears a necktie.
Bái:	他 chwān syé, 也 jì syé 帶子麼?	Does he tie his shoelaces after he puts on his shoes?
張:	對了. 他 jì了 syé 帶子就 chwān 上衣.	Yes. After he has tied his shoelaces, he puts on his coat.
Bái:	他的上衣有 jǐ 個 kòu子?	How many buttons are there on his coat?
張:	就有兩個. 都 kòu 上了, 他就去吃早飯.	There are only two. After he has buttoned his coat, he goes to have his breakfast.

Bái:	早飯 他 都 吃 甚麼?	What does he have for breakfast?
張:	Jīdàn gēn kǎumyànbāu.	Eggs and toast.
Bái:	能 吃 jǐpyàn兒 kǎumyànbāu?	How many pieces of toast can he eat?
張:	兩 pyàn兒. 他 自己 kǎu.	Two pieces. He toasts them himself.
Bái:	他 喝 甚麼?	What does he drink?
張:	Nyóunǎi hwò是 kāfēi.	Milk or coffee.
Bái:	早上 他 看 bàu 不看?	Does he read the newspaper in the morning?
張:	他 天天 看, 所以 他 到 外頭 去 拿 bàu.	Yes, he does every day. Therefore he goes outside to get the newspaper.
Bái:	Bàu 在 那兒 放 je ne?	Where is the newspaper placed?
張:	門 旁邊兒 syinsyāng 裡頭. 可是 他 回到 屋子 裡頭 的 時候, 一看 鐘 tsái 知道 時候 已經 晚了.	In the mail box by the door. But when he gets back to the house, he sees the clock and realizes that it is late.
Bái:	甚麼 時候 了?	What time is it?

張:	Chà 十二分八點.	Twelve minutes to eight.
Bái:	他一定很 jāují ba.	He must be awfully worried.
張:	當 rán 很 jāují. 所以没喝 wán kāfēi, 就去拿 màu 子.	Surely he is worried. Therefore he goes to get his hat before finishing his coffee.
Bái:	他 hái 得 chwān 大衣麼?	Does he have to put on his overcoat?
張:	要 chwān 大衣, 要不 rán 太 lěng.	Yes, he has too, otherwise it would be too cold.
Bái:	Dài 好了 màu 子, chwān好了大衣, 就得跑 ba?	Does he have to run after putting on his hat and overcoat?
張:	他跑出去了.	Yes, then he runs out.

Vocabulary

76.	dàyī	大衣	N:	overcoat
77.	jīdàn	鷄蛋	N:	(chicken) egg
77.1	jī	鷄	N:	chicken
78.	jì	繫	V:	to tie
79.	kāfēi	咖啡	N:	coffee
80.	kǎu	烤	V:	toast (bread), roast (chicken, etc.) bake (bread)
81.	kòudz	釦子	N:	button
82.	kòushang	扣上	V:	button up
83.	kùdz	褲子	N:	trousers, pants
84.	myànbāu	麵包	N:	bread
85.	nyóunǎi	牛奶	N:	cow's milk
85.1	nyóu	牛	N:	cow, ox, cattle
86.	pídài	皮帶	N:	leatner belt
87.	pyàr (pyàn)	片兒	M:	slice; tablet (medicine)
88.	shàngyī	上衣	N:	coat (upper garment)
89.	syédàidz	鞋帶子	N:	shoelaces

L. 45

90.	syìnsyāng	信箱	N:	mail box
91.	wàdz	襪子	N:	socks, stockings
92.	wòfáng	臥房	N:	bedroom

III. *Grammar Analysis*

1. Use of *wàng* and *tsúng*

Wàng or *tsúng* may be followed by certain directional placewords as follows:

shàng		dūng	
syà	-tóu	nán	-byār (but not *tóu*)
chyán	-byār	syī	
hòu		běi	
		dzwǒ	
		yòu	

The ending -*tóu* or -*byār* may be omitted, especially when both *tsúng* and *wàng* are used in a sentence with opposite pair of directional placewords in the following construction.

tsúng	shàng	wàng	syà
	dzwǒ		yòu
	chyán		hòu
	dūng		syī
	nán		běi

Tsúng may refer to time. In this case *chǐ* (start) will be used after *tsúng* and the time word. *Tsúng* may also mean "by way of", "via" or "through", instead of its original meaning "from".

Kāi chìchēde shŕhou, tsúng shānshang wàng syà kāi, rúngyi kāide kwài. Tsúng shānsya wàng shàng kāi bùrúngyi kwài.	Driving a car, it is easy to go fast downhill. This is not so going uphill.
Nyàn Yīngwén shū, tsúng dzwǒ wàng yòu nyàn.	Reading a book in English, you read from left to right.

nyàn Jūnggwo shū tsúng shàng wàng syà nyàn.	but reading a book in Chinese, it is from top to bottom.
Tā tsúng jǐntyān chǐ,dzài jèige sywésyàu jyāushū.	He starts teaching at this school today.
Nǐ tsúng shémma shŕhou chǐ sywéde Yǐngwén?	When did you start to learn English?
Jèr tsúng chwānghu kàndejyàn hǎi ma?	Can you see the ocean through the window from here?

Translate the following:

1) How far is U.S.A. from east to west?
2) It is interesting to look down from an airplane.
3) I have not eaten anything since yesterday.
4) Starting from tomorrow, I am going to study French.
5) Please look through the window and see if he is coming.
6) From yesterday till now I have been feeling uncomfortable. I am sick.
7) This airplane is flying northwest. It goes to San Francisco.

2. Shr̀.....-de construction

The shr̀....-de construction is used to stress some circumstance as time, place, means, purpose, rather than the action of the main verb. It is the when, where, who, what, or how of the action that is to be stressed. While the -de follows the main verb, the shr̀, if used, is generally right before the circumstance to be stressed.

Wǒ (shr̀) dzwótyān tsúng Jyòujīnshān kāi chē láide.	It was yesterday that I came from San Francisco by car.
Wǒ dzwótyān shr̀ tsúng Jyòujīnshān kāi chē láide.	It was from San Francisco that I came here by car yesterday.
Wǒ dzwótyān tsúng Jyòujīnshān shr̀ kāi chē láide.	It was by car that I came here from San Francisco yesterday.

When there is an object in the sentence, -de may go either after the verb or after the object. The former pattern is more common.

Tā shr̀ dzài fàngwǎrli chr̄de fàn.	He ate in a restaurant.
Tā shr̀ dzài fàngwǎrli chr̄fàn de.	He ate in a restaurant.

Translate the following with the stress on the underlined words:

1) He went to China by boat last year.
2) He bought this pen at that store.
3) I came here in his car.
4) He took a bath in the bathroom, and put on his clothes in the bedroom.
5) He came here from school at five o'clock this afternoon.
6) He came to America from Shanghai, China.
7) Mrs. Wáng went to town to buy a hat.

IV. Pattern Drill

Pattern 1

Use of directional placewords 往 and 從

A.

從 往	上	from to	the top
	下		the bottom
	前		the front
	後		the rear
	dzwǒ		the left
	you		the right
	東		the east
	西		the west
	南		the south
	北		the north

從前頭看這個房子	looking at the house from the front
從南邊兒來	come from the south
從dzwǒ 邊兒寫	write from the left(side)
從上頭拿	take from the top
往前頭走	walk forward
往東邊兒去	go eastward
往上跑	run up
往yòu邊兒開	drive toward the right

B. Opposite pairs of directional placewords

從上往下	from the top to the bottom
從 dzwǒ 往 yòu	from the left to the right
從前往後	from the front to the rear
從東往西	from the east to the west
從南往北	from the south to the north

C.

從今天起	from today on
從 lǐbài 一起	beginning Monday

Examples:

1) 從 lóu 上的 chwānghu 看出去,可以看見車站.

Looking out from the upstairs window, you can see the (railway) station.

2) 從 dzwǒ 往 yòu, di 一個人是王太太, dì 二個人是王小 jye, dì 三個人我不 rèn 得.

The first person from the left to the right is Mrs. Wang, the second person is Miss Wang, the third person I don't recognize.

3) 從昨天起他在這個學校學中國話了.

Beginning yesterday, he started learning Chinese at this school.

Exercise:

a. Fill in the following blanks orally:

1) __________dūng______syī dzǒu.

2) _______dzwǒ_______yòu nyàn.

3) Chǐng nǐ_______chwānghu wàitou kàn.

4) _______míngtyan_____ wǒ buchōuyān le.

5) _____Fàgwo_______dūng dzǒu kéyi dàu shémma dìfang?

b. Render the following into English orally:

1) Míngtyan wǒmen yíkwàr tsúng nǐ jyā dàu chéng lǐtou chyù.

2) Nǐ kàn, nèisye chìchē dōu wàng nǎr kāi?

3) Nǐ tsúng nǎr lái?

4) Wàng Běipíng chyùde fēijī dwō ma?

5) Nǐmen kànjyan tsúng nánbyār láide nèi lyǎngge rén le ma?

6) Wǎnshang tsúng chwánshang kàn Jyóujīnshān, jēn hǎukàn.

7) Tsúng hǎibyār dàu tā jyā dzwèi jìn.

8) Tsúng shūshang sywélaide.

c. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) He said he stopped drinking since last week.

2) His father came to this country from England some forty years ago.

3) One block west of your house is his store.

4) Are you going to school from here?

5) I don't know where these people are from.

6) I saw them driving toward the east. They did not say where they were going.

7) Are we going toward the train station? If you are not sure, we'd better ask someone.

8) All the roads to the east are closed today.

Pattern 2

是....... 的 construction

他們都是坐火車來的.	It was by train that they all came (here).

Examples:

1) 這個 myànbāu 是昨天做的.	This bread was baked yesterday.
2) 你的 yǐ子是在那兒買的？	Where was it that you bought your chair?

3) 他們是從後門進來的麼？ Was it through the rear door that they entered (here)?

Exercise:

a. Render the following into English orally:

1) Tāde Jūnggwohwà shr̀ dzài Jūnggwo sywé de.

2) Lyánjǎng shr̀ kāi dzàijùngchē chyùde.

3) Nǐ shr̀ dzwò tāde chē láide ma?

4) Wǒmen dōu bujr̄dau tāde tàitai shr̀ tsúng nǎr láide.

5) Jīntyande fàn shr̀ nǐ mǔchin dzwòde ma?

6) Wǒmende wǎnfan shr̀ dzài chéng lǐtou chr̄de.

7) Jèige nàujūng shr̀ wǔkwài chyán mǎide.

8) Tā shwō tā shr̀ dzài lóushangde dzǎufáng syǐde dzǎu.

9) Tāmen dàu Jyòujīnshān shr̀ mǎi dūngsyi chyùde.

10) Wǒmen dōu shr̀ tsúng tā jyā láide.

b. Render the following into Chinese:

1) Did you come with him?

2) I came by train, not by boat.

3) If you came by airplane, you would see the city from above.

4) The coat was given to him by Mr. Wang. The pants were given to him by Mr. Lee.

5) All my pajamas were bought from that store.

6) The leather belt I am wearing was made in Japan.

7) We are here to see your brother.

8) We all came here from San Francisco in his new car.

c. Answer the following questions:

1) Jèige chwānghu shr̀ shéi gwānshangde?

2) Nǐ tsái mǎide myànbāu shr̀ dzài něige pùdz mǎide?

3) Jèige nyóunǎi shr̀ gěi háidz chr̄de ma?

4) Nǐde dàyī shr̀ tsúng Jūnggwo dàilaide ma?

5) Jīntyande kāfēi shr̀ nǐ dzwòde ma?

6) Tā chr̄de jī shr̀ kǎude ma?

7) Nǐde shàngyī hěn hǎukàn, shr̀ dzài nǎr mǎide?

8) Nǐ háidzde syédàidz tyāntyān shr̀ nǐ gěi tā jìde ma?

Homework

A. Read the following story out loud several times:

Lǐ Shàngshr̀ měityan chr̄de dzǎufàn dōu yíyàng. Lyǎngge jīdàn, yípyàn nyóuròu, yìbēi nyóunǎi, lyǎngkwài kǎumyànbāu, yìbēi kāfēi. Chr̄le jyòu chyù shàngbān. Lǐbàilyòu gēn lǐbàityān tā búchyù shàngbān, swóyi chǐde hěn wǎn. Kěshr dzǎufàn háishr yíyàng. Tāde tàitai dzwòfàn dzwòde hěn hǎu, bìngchyě yě hěn syǐhwan dzwòfàn. Lǐ Shàngshr̀ chángcháng gàusung tāde péngyou tā tàitai dzwòde fàn shr shr̀jyeshang dzwèi hǎuchr̄de fàn.

B. Answer the following questions:

1) Lǐ Shàngshr̀ tyāntyān shàngbān ma?

2) Tā chr̄ dzǎufàn ma?

3) Tā chr̄ shémma dzǎufàn?

4) Tā tàitai hwèi dzwòfàn ma?

5) Tā tàitai dzwòfàn dzwòde hǎu ma?

6) Tā chángcháng gàusung péngyou shémma?

V. READING

A. Characters (Nos. 234-241)

234.	每	měi	NU:	each	每天	- every day
					每一個人	- each person
					每張畫兒	- each painting
235.	夜	yè	N:	night	一夜	- one night
					夜裡	- at night
					半夜	- midnight
236.	還 還 还	hái	A:	still, yet again	還有 ne 還要去	- still have (some) - still want to go, go again
		[hwán]	[V:	repay]		
237.	愛	ài	V:	love	我愛你	- I love you
			AV:	like to or love to	愛念書	- love to study
238.	哭	kū	V:	cry	別哭	- don't cry
					愛哭	- like to cry
239.	跟	gēn	CV:	with, and (accompanying)	跟誰去	- go with whom?
					他跟我說	- he said to me;
240.	笑	syàu	V:	smile, laugh; laugh at	笑話	- joke
					笑 je 說	- says laughingly

241. 聽 tīng V: listen
听

聽說 - hear it said
好聽 - good to listen to
聽gù事 - listen to a story
聽見 - hear

B. Sentences

1. 那兒有不愛孩子的母親?
2. 他就會說笑話,不願意作事.
3. 坐fēijī從上頭往下頭看,房子都小極了.
4. 我聽說過有人喝了酒就哭.
5. 我想請你跟jǐ位老朋友吃飯.
6. 學校離我們家很遠,每天上學得走半點鐘.
7. 喝茶喝的太多了,一夜沒睡.
8. 你知道他很小心,為甚麼還不放心?
9. 那個飯館兒有人給你開門關門.
10. 先生問誰姓張,誰的名字叫大有.
11. 街上的那個書鋪也賣畫兒.

12. 新船走的 bǐ 魚快, 舊的 bǐ 魚慢.

13. 火車站一邊兒是酒館兒, 一邊兒是飯館兒.

14. 我打算往南走, 可是他告訴我應當往北走.

15. 這句不對, 那句也錯了.

16. 別笑我已經吃了很多菜了.

17. 很多事, 看 je 容易, 做的時候很難.

18. 從明天起他要天天帶孩子出去玩兒去了.

19. 我的 pí 帶好, 你的更好, 他的最好.

20. 你送給他的那件大衣是你自己拿去的麼?

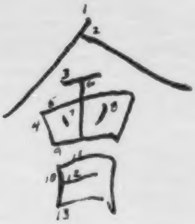
C. Story

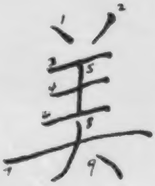
不知道為甚麼小 mèimei 昨天夜裡不睡覺, 老哭. 父親知道 mèimei 愛聽 gù 事. 父親說:「從前中國有一個人叫 Yúgūng,

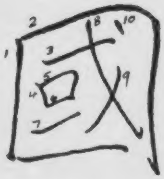
他家房子前頭有一個大山. 每天 Yúgūng 出門得上山下山,很不方 byan. Yúgūng 想了一個法子. 他要把這個山 bān 到別的地方去. 他叫家裡的男人女人,大的小的,都幫 jə bān 這個山. 別人看見他們從早到晚一天在忙 jə bān 山,就笑他們. 這件事叫他朋友聽見了,就跟他說:「Yúgūng, 你今年已經七十多了,山這麼大.你想你能 bānwán 這個山麼?」Yúgūng 說:「那不要jìn. 我 bān 不 wán, 還有我兒子. 我兒子 bān 不 wán, 還有他兒子. 我們一定有一天能把這個山 bānwán 的.」

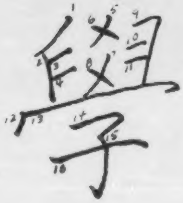
VI. WRITING

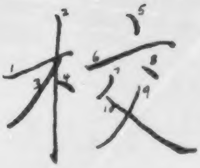
A. Writing (Characters 151-155)











B. Radicals

1. 曰 (speak, 73) as in: 會
2. 𦍌 (sheep, 123) as in: 美
3. 囗 (enclosure, 31) as in: 國
4. 子 (child, 39) as in: 學
5. 木 (wood, 75) as in: 校

Lesson 46

1. Structural Dialogue

1.	A:	這兩件 chènshān, 你 bǐ 了 沒有?	Have you compared these two shirts?
	B:	Bǐ 了 半天, 可是我還看不出來那件好.	I have compared them for a long time, but I still can't see which is better.
	A:	那兩 tyáu lǐng 帶, 你 bǐ 了麼?	Have you compared those two neckties?
	B:	也 bǐ 了. 當 rán húng 的好點兒.	Yes, I have also. Certainly the red one is a little better.
	A:	請你把這兩 lyàng chì 車 bǐ 一 bǐ, 那個 pyányi.	Please compare these two cars and see which is more reasonable.
	B:	不用 bǐ 了. 都不能開了.	There is no use in comparing them. Neither of them can run.
	A:	請你把這兩門 pàu bǐbǐ, 那門 lìhai.	Please compare these two guns and see which is more powerful.
	B:	我想那門大的 lìhai.	I think that bigger one is more powerful.

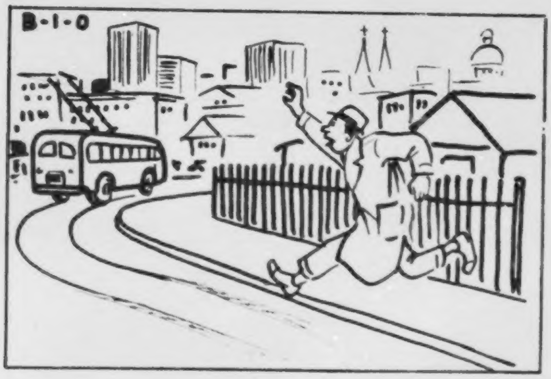
2.	A:	你們 兩個人 誰 gwā hú 子 gwā 的 gānjing?	Which one of you two can shave cleaner?
	B:	他 bĭ 我 gwā 的 gānjing.	He shaves cleaner than I.
	A:	誰 喝酒 喝的多 ?	Who drinks more?
	B:	他 bĭ 我 會喝. 多少酒 都能 喝得下去 .	He beats me in drinking. He can drink any amount of wine (or liquor).
	A:	誰 tsā syé tsā 的好 ?	Who can polish shoes better?
	B:	我 bĭ 他 會 tsā.	I can polish better than he.
	A:	誰作 kăujī 作的好?	Who can make better roast chicken?
	B:	我 bĭ 他 作的好.	I can make better roast chicken than he.
	A:	誰吃 myànbāu 吃的多?	Who eats more bread?
	B:	我 bĭ 他 吃的多.	I eat more bread than he.
3.	A:	你們 今天 念書 , 誰 念的好?	In today's reading, who read better?
	B:	我 bĭ 他 念的好.	I read better than he.
	A:	寫字 ne?	How about writing?
	B:	我也 bĭ 他 寫的好.	I also wrote better than he.

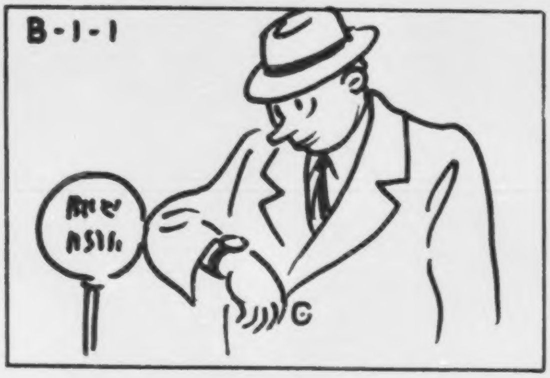
	A:	你們唱歌，誰唱的多？	Who sang more songs?
	B:	他 bǐ 我多唱了一個歌兒.	He sang one more song than I did.
	A:	寫 syìn, 誰寫的多?	Who wrote more letters?
	B:	他 bǐ 我多寫了一 fēng, 因為他有女朋友，我沒有.	He wrote one more letter than I did, because he has a girlfriend while I don't.
	A:	畫畫兒 ne?	How about painting?
	B:	他 bǐ 我多畫了兩張.	He painted two more pictures than I did.
4.	A:	你們的 pí 帶誰的 cháng?	Who has a longer belt?
	B:	他的 bǐ 我的 cháng 多了，因為他是 pàng 子.	His is much longer than mine because he is plump.
	A:	誰的 kù 子大?	Whose pants are bigger?
	B:	他的 bǐ 我的大的多.	His are also much bigger than mine.
	A:	誰的 gāngkwēi 小?	Whose helmet is smaller?
	B:	我的 bǐ 他的小一點兒.	Mine is a little smaller than his.

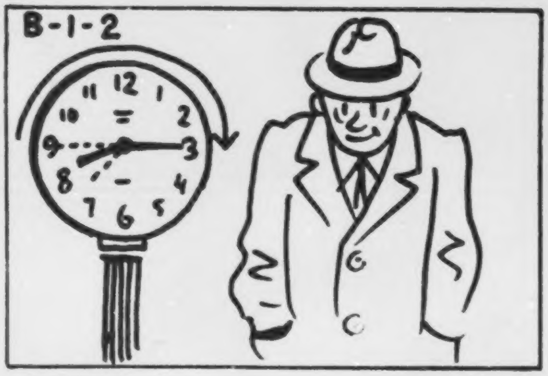
A: 誰的 lǐng帶貴?	Whose necktie is more expensive?
B: 我的 bǐ 他的貴五毛錢.	Mine is fifty cents more expensive than his.
A: 誰的大衣 dwǎn?	Whose overcoat is shorter?
B: 我的 bǐ 他的 dwǎn 好 syē.	Mine is much shorter than his.
A: 你的 syē bǐ 他的小麼?	Are your shoes smaller than his?
B: 當 rán 小, 小好 syē.	Of course, much smaller.
A: 你的 wà子 bǐ 他的小麼?	Are your socks smaller than his?
B: 小不少.	Much smaller.
A: 你的 gēbei bǐ 他的 dwǎn 麼?	Are your arms shorter than his?
B: Bǐ 他的 dwǎn, 可是 dwǎn 的不多.	Shorter than his, but not much shorter.
. A: 你昨天到他家去了麼?	Did you go to his house yesterday?
B: 去了. 可是他家裡頭 lyán 一個人都沒有.	Yes, I did, but there wasn't even one person at his house.

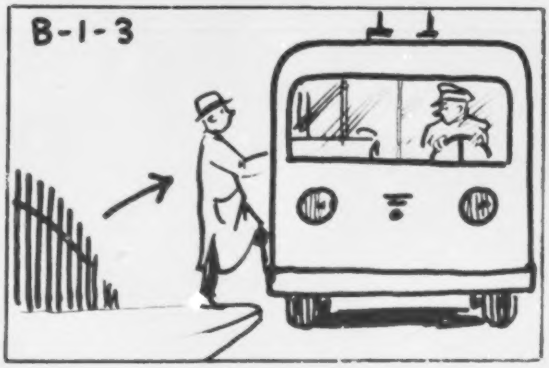
	A:	對了 . 他跟他太太都出去賣東西去了 .	That's right. He and his wife went out to sell things.
	B:	為甚麼 ?	Why?
	A:	他們沒錢了, lyán 一分錢都沒有了 .	They were out of money: they didn't have even a cent.
	B:	他們賣甚麼 ?	What did they sell?
	A:	他們賣 yǐ 子 .	They were selling chairs.
	B:	他們的 yǐ 子都賣出去了麼 ?	Did they sell all their chairs?
	A:	Lyán 一個也沒賣出去 .	They didn't sell even one.
6.	A:	為甚麼那 lyàng 舊 chì 車你 lyán 看都不看 ?	Why didn't you even take a look at that old car?
	B:	誰也不買那麼舊的 chì 車 .	Nobody wants to buy old cars like that.
	A:	為甚麼你 lyán 問都不問他們賣多少錢 ne?	Why didn't you even ask how much it was?
	B:	Lyán 他送給我, 我都不要.	I wouldn't take it even if it were given to me.

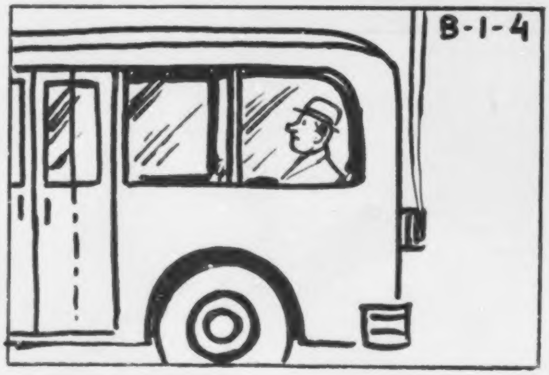
	A:	要是 我 賣給 你 一 lyàng 那 yàng 兒的 chì 車, 你 要 麼?	If I wanted to sell you a car like that, would you want it?
	B:	Lyán 你 賣, 我 都 不要 .	I wouldn't want it even if you were selling it to me.
7.	A:	為甚麼 他的 早飯 沒有 jīdàn?	Why didn't he have eggs for breakfast?
	B:	他 lyán 吃 myànbāu 都 吃不起 .	He can't even afford to eat bread.
	A:	他 也 沒有 nyóunǎi麼?	Didn't he have milk?
	B:	沒有 ,他 lyán 喝 kāfēi 也 喝不起	No, he can't even afford to drink coffee.
8.	A:	你們 聽了 他 說 的 syàu 話兒, 一定 syàu的 很 lǐhai ba.	You must have laughed a lot after you heard him telling jokes?
	B:	我們 lyán 半分鐘 都 沒 syàu.	We didn't laugh even for half a minute.
	A:	他的 lyǎn 一定 húng的 hěn lǐhai ba.	His face must have been terribly red, I suppose.
	B:	他的 lyǎn lyán húng 都 沒 húng.	No, he didn't even blush.

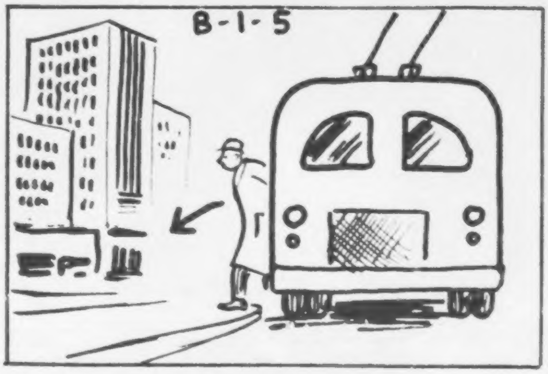

B-1-0

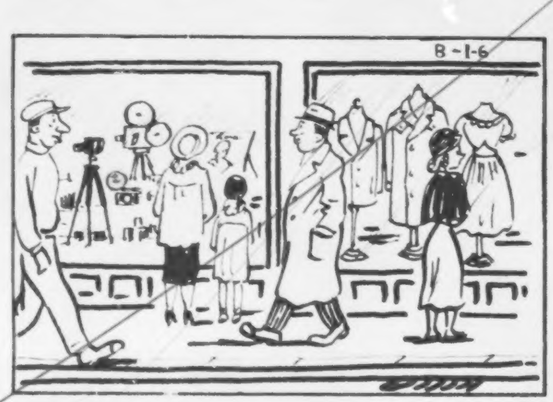

B-1-1


B-1-2

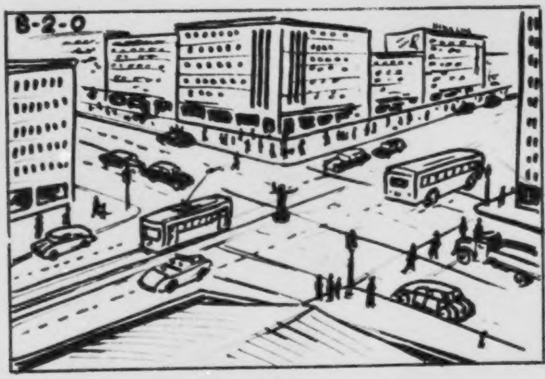

B-1-3

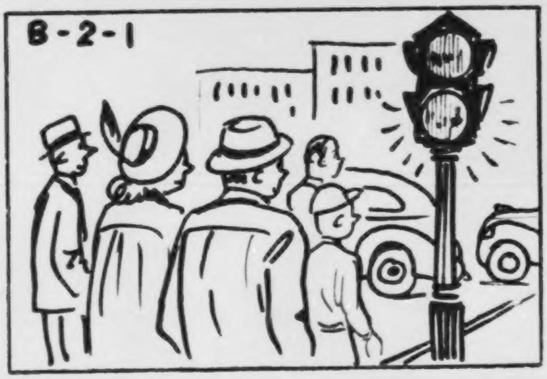

B-1-4

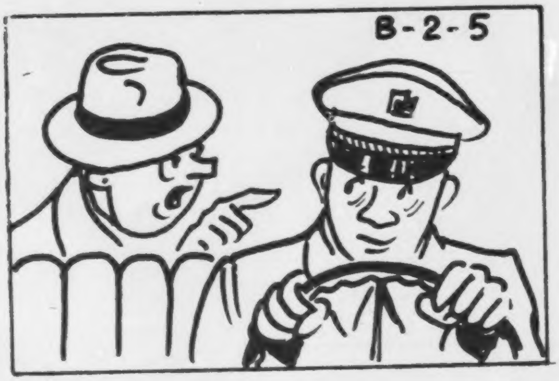

B-1-5


B-1-6

L. 46







II. Basic Dialogue

Bái:	Hwáng 美生 要坐 gūng-gùng-chì 車 去 上 bān 麼?	Is Měishēng Hwáng going to his office by bus?
張:	不. 他 得 坐 dyàn 車. 他 要到 yín 行* 去. 他 在 yín 行 作事.	No, he has to take a trolley car. He is going to the bank. He works in a bank.
Bái:	他 上了 dyàn 車 了 麼 ?	Did he get on the trolley car?
張:	沒有 , 他 去 晚了. Dyàn 車 走了 .	No, he was late and the car had left.
Bái:	他 jwēi 了 沒有 ?	Did he run after it?
張:	他 jwēi 了 半天 , 可是 沒 jwēi 上 .	Yes, he chased it for a long time, but didn't catch it.
Bái:	他 錯過了 那 lyang 車, dzěn 麼 bàn?	What did he do after having missed the car?
張:	他 得 站在 車站 děng 下 一 tsž 的 車 .	He stood at the bus depot to wait for the next car.
Bái:	八點 一 kè 車 又 來了 . 他 上車 了 麼 ?	At a quarter past eight a car came again. Did he board it?

* 行 is pronounced here as háng

張:	上去了．車裡頭就有他一個人.	Yes, he did. He was the only one in the car.
Bái:	他給 sz̄jī 的錢了沒有?	Did he pay the driver?
張:	給了. 給了錢就在後頭坐下了.	Yes, he did. He sat down at the rear of the car after having paid the fare.
Bái:	他下了車就到了 yín 行了麼?	Did he get to the bank after he got off the car?
張:	沒到 ne. 還得過 jǐtyáu 街. 可是他不 rènshr 路了.	No, not yet. There were still several blocks to go. However, he did not recognize the streets.
Bái:	他 jāují 沒 jāují?	Was he worried or not?
張:	他有點兒 jāují.	Yes, he was somewhat worried.
Bái:	街上都有甚麼鋪子 ne?	What stores were there on the street?
張:	有賣 jàusyàngjī 的鋪子, 也有賣女人衣shang 的鋪子.	There were a camera shop and a dress shop.
Bái:	他在十字路口兒等甚麼?	What was he waiting for at the intersection?

張:	那兒有 húnglyùdēng. 看見 húngdēng 的時候不能過街.	There were traffic lights. He couldn't cross the street against a red light.
Bái:	Syàn 在是 lyùdēng 了. 他過街了.	Now that the light has turned green, he crossed the street.
張:	他過了街就去問 jǐngchá.	After he crossed the street he asked a policeman.
Bái:	Jǐngchá 說甚麼?	What did the policeman say?
張:	Jǐngchá 說先過兩 tyáu 街, 往 yòu jwǎnwān 兒, dzài 走三 tyáu 街, 往 dzwǒ jwǎnwān 兒, dzài 一 jŕ 走.	The policeman said: "Walk two blocks, turn right, then walk three blocks, turn left, and then walk straight ahead."
Bái:	他 jì 得麼?	Did he remember that?
張:	他不 jì 得, 所以他要找一個出 dzū-chì 車.	No, he didn't. Therefore he wanted to find a taxi.
Bái:	出 dzū-chì 車 bǐ gūnggùng-chì 車快麼?	Is a taxi faster than the bus?
張:	快的多.	Much faster.
Bái:	他告訴那個出 dzū-chì 車的 szjī 怎麼走麼?	Did he tell the taxi driver which way to go?

張: 對了. 可是那個 sz̄ji lyán 聽也不聽. 他知道 dzěn 麼走. 一會兒就到 yín 行了.	Yes, he did. But the driver did not bother to listen. He knew how to get there. And shortly they got to the bank.

Vocabulary

93.	chūdzū	出租	V:	for rent
93.1	chūdzū-chìchē	出租汽車	N:	taxi
94.	dēng	燈	N:	light; lamp
95.	dyànchē	電車	N:	trolley car
96.	gwò jyē	過街	VO:	cross a street
96.1	gwò (NU-tyáu) ..jyē		PH:	cross (number) blocks
97.	jàusyàngjī	照相機	N:	camera
97.1	jàusyàng	照相	VO:	take pictures
98.	jīhwèi	機會	N:	opportunity
99.	jǐngchá	警察	N:	policeman
100.	jwǎnwār	轉彎兒	VO:	make a turn, turn
101.	jwēi	追	V:	chase after
101.1	jwēishang	追上	RV:	catch up with
102.	shŕdz̀lùkǒur	十字路口兒	N:	intersection
103.	syàng	向	CV:	toward
104.	sz̄jī	司機	N:	operator (of a bus, street car, etc.)
105.	tswògwo	錯過	V:	missed

L. 46

106.	yínháng	銀行	N:	bank
107.	yíngyè	營業	N:	business

III. Grammar Analysis

1. The use of bǐ

Bǐ has been introduced in Lesson 38 as a coverb for comparison. However, it can also be used as a full verb.

Wǒmen lyǎngge rén bǐle bàntyān, háishr bùjr̄dau shéi gāu.	The two of us compared for a long time, but we still don't know who is taller.
Chǐng nǐ bǎ jèi lyǎngběn shū bǐyibǐ, něiběn nán, něiběn rúngyi.	Please compare these two books to see which is harder and which is easier.

Degree of comparison is expressed by an adverb which is put after the stative verb.

Jèige bǐ nèige gwèi dwōle.	This is much more expensive than that.
Jèige bǐ nèige gwèide dwō.	This is much more expensive than that.
Jèige bǐ nèige gwèi yìdyǎr.	This is a little more expensive than that.
Jèige bǐ nèige gwèi sānmáu.	This is thirty cents more expensive than that.
Jèige bǐ nèige gwèi hǎusyē.	This is much more expensive than that.
Jèige bǐ nèige gwèi bùshǎu.	This is much more expensive than that.
Jèige bǐ bèige gwèi bùdwō.	This is not much more expensive than that.

Jèige bǐ nèige gwèi dwōshau?	How much more expensive is this than that?

In a sentence where there is a functive verb instead of a stative verb, an adverb may be used after the functive verb which takes the -de ending.

Wǒ bǐ tā láide dzǎu.	I came earlier than he.
Tā bǐ wǒ chr̄de kwài.	He eats faster than I.
Nǐ bǐ wǒ pǎude màn.	You run slower than I.
Wǒ bǐ tā chàngde hǎu.	I sing better than he.

To show the difference of comparison in a sentence which has a functive verb, the adverb goes before the verb, and the number-measure phrase showing the difference goes after the verb.

Tā bǐ wǒ dwō chr̄le yìwǎn fàn.	He ate one more bowl of rice than I.
Wǒ bǐ tā dzǎu láile yíge jūngtóu.	I came one hour earlier than he.
Nǐ bǐ wǒ dwō syěle shŕge dz̀.	You wrote ten more characters than I.
Tā bǐ wǒ dzǎu líkaile yìtyān.	He left one day earlier than I.

Translate the following:

1) Her overcoat is much more beautiful than her sister's.
2) This towel is a little cleaner than that one.
3) He is one inch taller than I.
4) He works one more hour than I do.
5) This belt is one dollar cheaper than that one.

6) I am three years older than he is.

7) I came here five minutes earlier than he did.

8) He knows much more than I do.

2. Lyán......dōu (yě)

Lyán (even) is used to show stress, and may go before the subject, the verb, or the object of a sentence depending on which part is to be emphasized. When lyán is used, dōu (or yě) will be used before the verb. The part emphasized by lyán has to go before the verb preceded by dōu (or yě). Therefore, if the object of a sentence is emphasized with lyán, it has to be transposed.

Lyán yíge rén dōu méiyǒu.	There isn't even one person.
Lyán kàn yě búkàn.	Doesn't even bother to look.
Lyán wǒ chyù dōu bùsyíng.	It won't do even if I go.
Lyán wǒ gěi tā chyán, tā dōu búywànyi.	He isn't willing even if I pay him.
Lyán chìchē tā dōu búhwèi kāi.	He doesn't even know how to drive a car.
Tā lyán chyù dōu méichyù.	He didn't even go.

Translate the following:

1) I don't even know where he is.

2) Even the children know a few words of English.

3) He cannot afford to buy even an old car.

4) Mrs. Lǐ won't come even if I invite her.

5) I don't know even one person here.

6) He didn't even come.

IV. Pattern Drill

Pattern 1

The use of bǐ

A. Bǐ as a main verb

我們bǐ-bǐ這兩個jàusyàngjī. 看那個大.	Let us compare these two cameras to see which is larger.

Examples:

1) 你bǐ-bǐ這jǐtyáu路. 告訴我那tyáu最近.	Compare these few routes and tell me which is the shortest.
2) 這兩個jǐngchá bǐ了半天, 不知道誰gāu.	After comparing height for a long while, those two policemen were not able to tell who was taller.
3) 我的sz̄jī跟你的sz̄jī不能bǐ. 你的sz̄jī好多了.	There is no comparison between my chauffeur and yours. Yours is much better than mine.
4) 我把那三個dēng bǐ了bǐ. 我還是喜歡那個hwáng的.	I made a comparison between those three lamps. I still prefer the yellow one.

Exercise:

Say the following sentences aloud and render them into English:

1) Chǐng nǐ bǐyibǐ nǐmen shàngyīde kòudz. Yàngdz dōu yiyàng ma?

2) Bǐyibǐ jèige chéng gēn Jyòujīnshānde chūdzūchìchē. Nǎrde dwō?

3) Byé jàndzai shŕdz̀-lùkǒurbǐ dūngsyi. Jǐngchá láile!

4) Nǐ bǎ jèi lyǎngge yínháng bǐyibǐ, dzài bǎ chyán fàngjinchyu.

5) Nǐ bǎ wǒde pídài gēn tāde pídài bǐyibǐ, jyòu jr̄dau shéi pàngle?

6) Jèisye háidz bǐle yìhwěr, dōu shwō dz̀jǐ dzwèi hǎukàn.

7) Syàng dūng dzǒude lù buhǎu, dzěmma néng gēn syàng nán dzǒude bǐ.

8) Syǎuháidz jàude syàng dāngrán bunéng gēn dàrén jàude bǐ.

B. Bǐ as a co-verb

出dzū-chì 車 bǐ dyàn車快.	Taxis are faster than street cars.
出dzū-chì 車bǐ dyàn 車走的快.	"

(A) before a stative verb followed by the degree of comparison:

美國做事的jī 會bǐ 別的國多的多.	There are quite a few more job opportunities in America than in other countries.

Examples:

1)Dyàn車 bǐ 出dzū-chì 車pyányi 不少.	Street cars are quite a bit cheaper than taxis.
2) 十字路kǒur的dēng bǐ 我們jyā 裏 的 dēng 大的多.	The light at the intersection is much larger than that at our house.
3) Píngcháng yín行 yíngyè 的時候bǐ 鐘表鋪dwǎn 一點兒.	Ordinarily the business hours of the banks are a

little shorter than those of the "clock and watch" store.

4) Jwǎn這個小 wān兒 bǐ jwǎn 那個大 wān兒 快半分鐘.

Turning around in this small circle is half a minute faster than in that large circle.

Exercise:

Fill in the following blanks orally with any of the adverbs listed below to indicate the degree of comparison:

yìdyǎr bùdwō hěn shǎu	dwōle hěn dwō bùshǎu hǎu syē
-de bùdwō	-de dwō

1) Dàyī bǐ wàdz gwèi_______.

2) Yíge nyóu bǐ yìjr jī jùng _______.

3) Jyòujīnshānde tyānchi bǐ jèr lěng_______.

4) Shàuwèide chyán bǐ jūngwèide shǎu_______.

5) Dìèrtsz Shrjye-dàjàn yùngde wǔchì bǐ dìyītsz lìhai_____.

Fill in the following blanks with NU-M-(N) to express the degree of comparison:

6) Wǒ jywéde syānsheng dzwèi hǎu bǐ tàitai dà_______.

7) Syàndzài báityan bǐ yèli cháng (or dwǎn)_______.

8) Shŕdż-lùkǒurde húngdēng bǐ lyùdēng gāu _____.

(B) before a functive verb followed by the degree of comparison:

(a) 男kè人 bǐ 女 kè人(吃 myànbāu) 吃的多.

Male guests eat (a lot) more bread than female guests.

or 男kè人(吃 myànbāu) bǐ 女 kè人 吃的多.

(b) 男kè人bǐ女kè人多吃四pyan myànbāu.
The male guests ate four more slices of bread than the female guests.

Examples:

(a) 1) 老人bǐ年chīng的人走的慢.
Old people walk slower than young people.

2) 我Lǐbài天bǐ píngcháng起來的晚.
I get up later on Sundays (than ordinarily).

3) 這個yín行bǐ那個yín行bàn的好的多.
This bank is quite a bit better managed than that bank.

4) 天天先生bǐ學生來的早.
Every day the teacher comes earlier than the students.

(b) 1) 天天先生bǐ學生早來十五分鐘.
Every day the teacher comes 15 minutes earlier than the pupils.

2) 我今年bǐ去年少jàu了jǐ百張syàng.
This year I took several hundred fewer snapshots than last year.

Exercise:

Answer the following questions orally:

1) Syǎuhár yīngdāng bǐ dàren shwèide dwō ma?

2) Shàngsyàu bǐ syàshr̀ jr̄daude dwō ma?

3) Syǎu chìchē jwǎnwār bǐ dzàijùngchē jwǎnde kwàide dwō ma?

4) Bùbīng fàng bùchyāng bǐ píngchángde rén fàngde kwài yìdyǎr ma?

5) Fàgwo syáujye chwān yīshang bǐ byéren hǎukànde dwō ma?

6) Nǐ hěn ède shŕhou bǐ píngcháng dwō chr̄ jǐkwai myànbāu?

7) Nǐ syě nán syěde dż bǐ rúngyi syěde dż dwō syě jǐtsż?

8) Yàushr nǐ shǎu gěile sz̄jī yíkwai chyán, tā gēn bugēn nǐ yàu?

Pattern 2

The use of "lyán....... dōu (or yě)"

張Twánjǎng lyán一tsż jī-會也不 kěn錯過 .	Regimental Commander Jang isn't even willing to miss a single opportunity.

Examples:

A. Stress on noun:

1) Lyán sz̄jī 都不會開 這lyang chì車.	Even the driver is unable to drive this car.
2) Lyán 有bìng的老太太那個jǐngchá 都 jwēi 不上.	That policeman can't even catch up with a sick old lady.
3) 這個東西 lyán 他太太他都不給.	He wouldn't even give this thing to his wife.

B. Stress on verb:

1) Lyán yùbei 都没yùbei 他就上 kè了.	He didn't even prepare (his lessons) when he went to class.
2) Bānjǎng 進來的時候lyán 站起來他都没站起來. or Bānjǎng 進來的時候他lyán 站起來都没站起來.	He didn't even stand up when the Squad Leader entered.

C. Stress on verb object, co-verb object, verb, etc.:

1) Lyán過街你也pà, 還能打jàng麼? or 你lyán 過街也 pà, 還能打jàng麼?	You are even afraid of crossing the street, how can you (expect to) fight a war?
2) Lyán 唱歌他也打hāsyi, 因為他没睡覺. or 他 lyán 唱歌也打hāsyi, 因為他没睡覺.	He even yawned when he sang because he hadn't slept.
3) Lyán 到火車站去他也不願意. (他 lyán 到火車站去也不願意.)	He didn't even want to go to the railway station.

D. Stress on clause:

1) Lyán 學校有信syāng 出dzū, 少校也没告訴我. or 少校 lyán 學校有信syāng 出dzū 也没告訴我.	The major didn't even tell me that the school had (post office) boxes to let.

2) Lyán *我送過一個 jàusyàngjī給他* 他也 wàng 了. — He even forgot that I presented him with a camera.

or 他 lyán *我送過一個 jàusyàngjī給他* 也 wàng 了.

Exercise:

Say the following sentences out loud and rearrange them using "lyán....dōu(or yě)" pattern to emphasize the element underlined:

Ex: a. *Jǐngchá* méikàn húnglyùdēng.

Lyán *jǐngchá* dōu méikàn húnglyùdēng.

b. Jǐngchá méikàn *húnglyùdēng*.

Jǐngchá lyán *húnglyùdēng* dōu méikàn.

c. Jǐngchá *méikàn* húnglyùdēng.

Jǐngchá lyán *kàn* dōu méikàn húnglyùdēng.

1) *Yǐngjǎng* bùchwān wàdz.

2) Shr̆jǎng méigwā *húdz* jyòu shàngbānle.

3) Nèige syǎuháidz méi*kòu* shàngyīde kòudz.

4) Jèige màiyáshwāde méi*dǎswan* dau yínháng chyù.

5) Wǒ mèimei bùsyǐhwan *dzài* *mùchinde* *wòfáng* *shwèijyàu*.

6) Kāifēijīde bùjr̄dau *yīngdāng* *syàng* *dūng* *fēi* *háishr* *syàng* *syī* *fēi*.

7) Wǒ búyau kàn *nèi* *lyǎngge* *rén* *bǐ*(*tāmende*)*gēbei*.

Homework

Render the following sentences into Chinese:

1) Once you make a comparison between these photographs, you'll know (right away) which one is better.

2) My father's shoelaces are 3 or 4 inches longer than my little brother's.

3) Adults drink less milk than children do.

4) The banks in New York are better managed than banks in small towns.

5) Even taxi drivers can't catch up with our chauffeur.

6) The policeman even forgot to use his pistol when he was chasing the man.

7) My mother even gave me the camera that she likes best.

8) Even if I were a photographer, I would not take a picture for that child. ("lyán....dōu..." pattern should not be used for this sentence.)

V. READING

A. Characters (Nos. 242-248)

242.	現	syàn	BF:	present	現在	now
243.	正	jèng	A:	just, in the midst of	正好	just right
					正在看書	in the midst of reading(a book)
					正吃飯呢	in the midst of of a meal
244.	等	děng	V:	wait, wait for	等一會兒	wait for a while
					等着	waiting
					别等我	don't wait for me
245.	着	je	P:	(Verb suffix, indicating continuance	坐着	sitting
					等着	waiting
		jáu	P:	(indicates success in attaining object of the action	找不着	can't find (it)
		jāu	BF:		着 jí	be worried, get excited
246.	信	syìn	N:	letter, mail	寫信	write a letter
					兩 fēng 信	two letters
					信 syāng	mail box

247.	報 报	bàu	N:	newspaper	看報 - read the newspaper 買報 - buy a newspaper 賣報的 - newspaper vendor 報上說 - it is said in the newspaper 報紙 - newspaper
248.	呢	ne	P:	(sentence suffix, indicating continuance of action in positive statements and suspense in negative statements):	坐着呢 - is sitting 沒走呢 - not gone yet
				(suffix to questions)	你呢? - how about you?

"行" in "yín 行" reads "háng" (see Les.23)

Б. Sentences

1. 你為甚麽還沒寫信呢?
2. 我等着看一看今天的報.
3. 現在他正看着呢. 你得等一會兒.
4. Chì 車 hwài 了不必着jí, 可以叫出dzū-

chì 車.

5. 你這件上衣跟 kù 子不大也不小,正好.

6. 十字路口有信 syāng, 離這兒很近,就在那邊兒.

7. 請你 bǐ 一 bǐ 這兩張紙.那張好看一點兒?

8. 昨天半夜他哭着說:「我送你 mèimei 東西,人人都笑我.」

9. 昨天在城裡過街的時候,把我的筆 dyōu 了,找不着了.

10. 他真忙,每天 bǐ 別人多作一個鐘頭的事.

11. 你的法子好極了. lyán 最 bèn 的學生也學會了.

12. 張中 wèi 是張少校的兒子.他說人人應當當 bīng.

C. Story

老王愛唱歌兒,他最喜歡在他唱歌兒的

時候,有很多人聽.

他想在十二月二十五的那天,街上的人一定很多,他不能錯過這個好jī會,所以他想在那天在街上唱歌兒.

他就給他的朋友寫了很多信,也在報上告訴人,他那天要在街上唱歌兒.

到了十二月二十五,他在一個yín行前頭站在一張jwō子上唱歌兒. 聽的人真不少.

老王站在jwō子上,先跟那sye人說:「你們都知道我會唱歌兒,所以你們都來聽. 請你們先等一會兒,別着jí. 等我看看我的女朋友來了沒有.」

老王的女朋友說:「我已經來了. 現在就唱bai」

老王正在唱着歌兒的時候,人chà不多走了一半. 等他快唱wán的時候,就有一個人站在那兒了.

老王對那個人說:「他們都走了,他們都

不懂我唱的歌兒.」

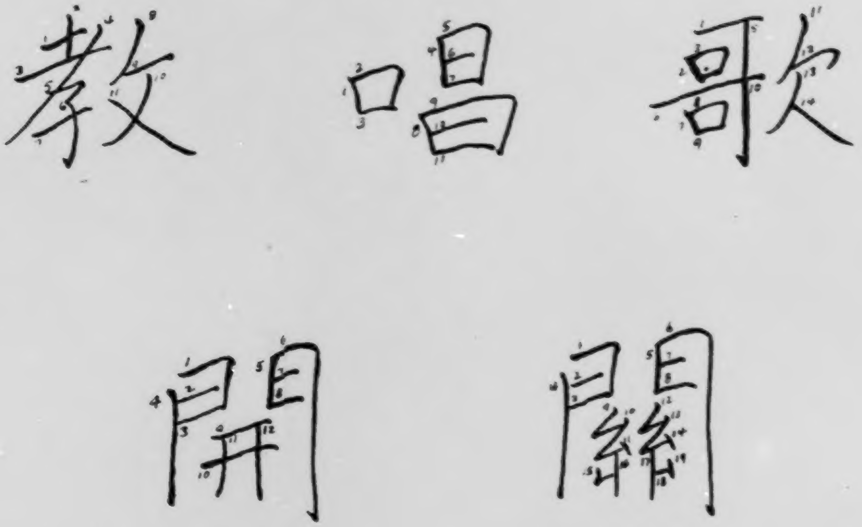
那個人説:「你的女朋友也不懂麼?」

老王説:「也 syǔ 他有要 jǐn 的事. Nín 一定懂我唱的歌兒.」

那個人説:「我也不懂. 我現在等着拿我的 jwō 子呢. Nín 用的那張 jwō 子是我的!」

VI. WRITING

A. Writing (Characters 156-160)



(闗)

B. Radicals

1. 攵 (tap, 66) as in: 教
2. 口 (mouth, 30) as in: 唱
3. 欠 (owe, 76) as in: 歌
4. 門 (door, 169) as in: 開, 關

L. 46

C. Dictionary Drill

Sixty Common Chinese Radicals - "Nature" Group (Cont'd)

Radical Number	Name	Radical	English Meaning	Examples
140	ts'ǎo-tzù-t'óu-erh	⺿ 艸 艹	Grass	花 英 草 華
164	yǔ	酉	Wine	醋 醉 酒 醬
167	chīn	金 釒	Gold; Metal	針 鐘 錢 鑒
170	tsǒ-ěrh-tāo-erh	阝 阜	Mound	阿 限 院
173	yǔ-tzù-t'óu-erh	雨 ⻗	Rain	雪 電 霧

1. Exercise: Find from dictionary the Wade-Giles romanization and meaning for the following characters:

	Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning		Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning
芬			苛		
醒			醃		
隣			零		
雷			鑽		
蒿			阻		
隆			酋		
藝			鑾		
鎮			阮		
酬			陣		
鑛			震		
霜			醫		

2. Home Work: Find from dictionary the Wade-Giles romanization and meaning for the following characters:

	Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning		Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning
霸			菠		
芹			酵		
配			隊		
銅			霧		
降			蔭		
雷			簡		
算			鎗		
際			續		
紗			隨		
程			稻		
碗			砌		

Lesson 47

I. Structural Dialogue

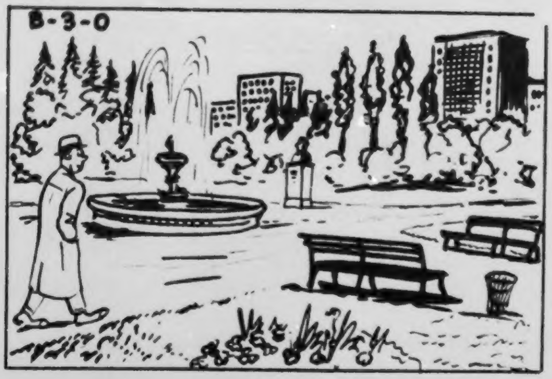
1. A:	你為甚麼不喜歡 Lǐ 下 shì?	Why don't you like Corporal Lǐ?
B:	他不 dàn 不 kěn 念書，也不 kěn 寫字.	He not only is unwilling to read but also unwilling to write characters.
A:	要是他也 kěn 念書，也 kěn 寫字，你就喜歡他了麼?	Would you like him if he were willing to read and write characters?
B:	因為還有很多事 ching，叫我不喜歡他，所以我還是不喜歡他.	I still wouldn't like him because there are very many other factors which cause me to dislike him.
A:	你覺得他一點兒都不好麼 ?	Do you consider him as being no good at all?
B:	我覺得他一點兒都不好.	Yes, I think he is no good at all.
A:	為甚麼 ?	Why?
B:	天天早上喝 kāfēi 的時候，他要不是沒錢，就是把錢 wàng 了帶來了.	At the coffee break in the morning each day, he is either broke or forgets to bring any money.

	A:	是不是他太太不給他錢?	Is it because his wife does not give him money?
	B:	要不是他太太不給他錢, 就是他把錢拿去喝酒了.	Either his wife doesn't give him money, or he has used the money for liquor.
	A:	我看他好syàng很有錢. 我不知道他可真沒有錢.	To me he seems to be quite well-to-do. I didn't know that he is really poor.
	B:	下tsż他跟你去喝kāfēi的時候你先問他有錢沒有, dzài跟他去.	Next time when he goes with you for coffee, you should first ask him whether he has any money, before going with him.
	A:	他沒有錢dzěn麼bàn?	What shall I do if he has no money?
	B:	沒有錢就不要去了.	Don't go if he has no money.
2.	A:	你想王中wèi的太太syàng誰?	Whom do you think 1/Lt.Wáng's wife resembles?
	B:	我覺得他syàng他母親.	I think she resembles her mother.
	A:	你覺得他們兩個人很syàng麼?	Do you think the two of them look very much alike?

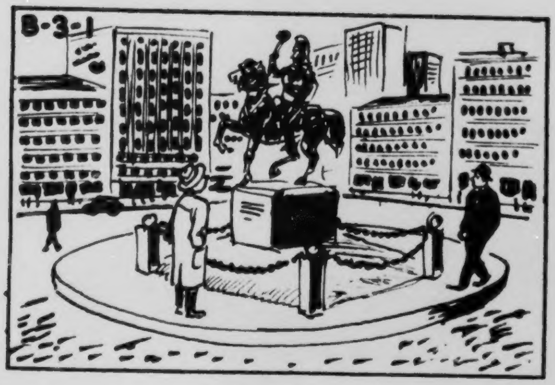
	B:	很 syàng. 說話的 yàng子最 syàng.	Very much so, especially the way they talk.
	A:	他們兩個人都 syàng很會說話 shr的.	They both seem to be quite eloquent.
	B:	對了. 都 syàng會說話 shr的, 可是都不會說話.	Yes, both seem to be eloquent, but actually they aren't.
3.	A:	他們都是中國人麼?	Are they both Chinese?
	B:	都是. 可是王太太看着好 syàng法國人.	Yes, they are. But Mrs.Wáng looks like a French woman.
	A:	他母親 ne?	How about her mother?
	B:	看着好 syàng Dé國人.	She looks like a German.
	A:	為甚麼你覺得王太太好 syàng法國人 shr的?	What makes you think that Mrs. Wáng looks like a French woman?
	B:	因為他說話好 syàng唱歌兒 shr的.	Because she talks as if she were singing.
	A:	為甚麼你覺得他母親好 syàng	What makes you think that her mother looks like a

		Dé國人 shr 的 ?	German?
	B:	因為他說話好 syàng 念書 shr 的.	Because she talks as if she were reading.
	A:	對了. 我也覺得他母親說話好 syàng 念書的 yàng子.	That is right. I also think that her mother talks as if she were reading.
4.	A:	你們早上 syōusyi jǐtsz̀?	How many breaks do you have in the morning?
	B:	Syōusyi 三 tsz̀.	Three breaks.
	A:	每 tsz̀ jǐ 分鐘?	How many minutes each time?
	B:	Dì 一 tsz̀ syōusyi 二十分鐘.	There are twenty minutes for the first break.
	A:	Dì 二 tsz̀ ne?	How about the second break?
	B:	Syōusyi 十分鐘.	Ten minutes for the second break.
	A:	Dì 三 tsz̀ ne?	How about the third break?
	B:	Dì 三 tsz̀ 就回家了.	We go home for the third break.

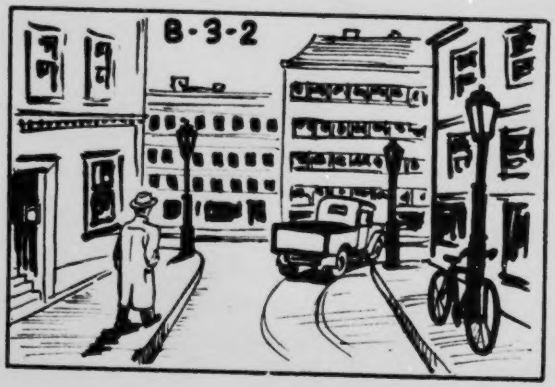
B-3-0



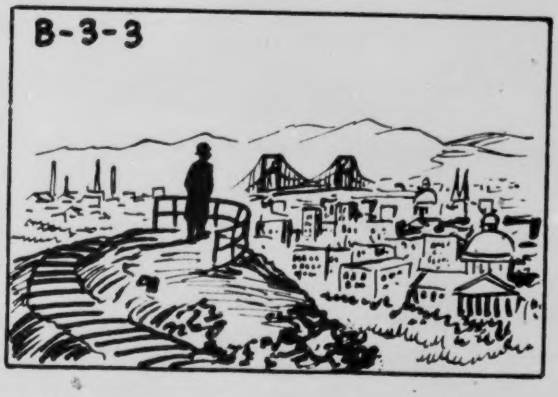
B-3-1



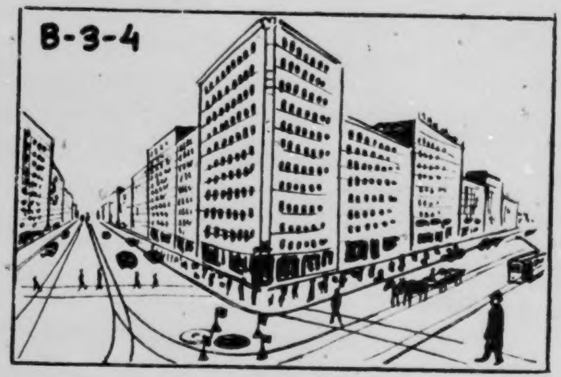
B-3-2



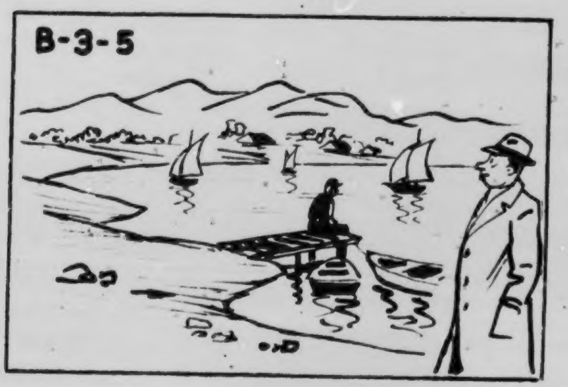
B-3-3



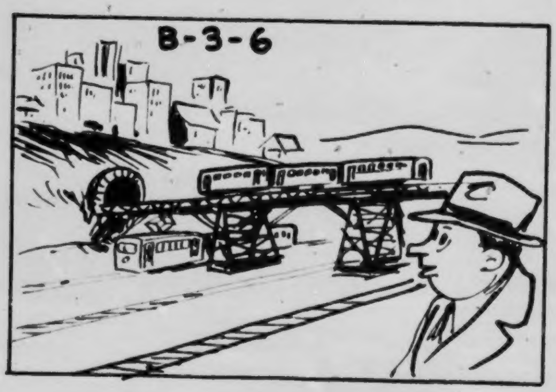
B-3-4



B-3-5



B-3-6



II. Basic Dialogue

Bái:	Hwáng 美生 作事 是 從 甚麼 時候 到 甚麼 時候 ?	From what hour to what hour does Měishēng Hwáng work?
張:	上wǔ 從 九點 到 十二點, 下wǔ 從 一點 到 五點.	From 9 o'clock to 12 o'clock in the morning and from 1 o'clock to 5 o'clock in the afternoon.
Bái:	從 十二點 到 一點 他 作 甚麼 ?	What does he do from 12 o'clock to 1 o'clock?
張:	Swéirán 他 不太 tsūng明, 可是 他 很會 用 那一個 鐘頭.	Although he isn't very clever, he knows how to spend that hour.
Bái:	他 得 在 那個 時候 吃飯 .	He has to eat at that hour.
張:	他 又 吃飯, 又 sànbù.	He eats food and he takes a walk.
Bái:	他 到 那兒 去 sànbù?	Where does he go to take a walk?
張:	Gūngywán 裡頭 . 有時候 他 在 shù dǐ 下 坐 一會兒 . 他 cháng 到 túngsyàng 那兒. 去 .	In the park. Sometimes he sits under the tree for a while. He often goes to where the bronze statue is.

Bái:	我想他一定很喜歡那個 túngsyàng.	I think he must be very fond of that statue.
張:	對了.	That's right.
Bái:	那個 gūngywán lí 他作事的那個 yín行很近麼?	Is that park very close to the bank where he works?
張:	很近. 他出了 gūngywán, 到了一個十字路 kǒu 兒, 看見了很多車.	Very near. He left the park and came to an intersection where he saw many cars.
Bái:	有自行車, 有 dzàijùng 車 ba.	There were bicycles and trucks, I suppose.
張:	對了. 有一 lyàng 自行車, 一 lyàng 舊 dzàijùng 車在路 dēng 那兒.	Yes, there was a bicycle and an old truck under the street lights.
Bái:	後來他到那兒去了?	Where did he go then?
張:	過了那個街, 他就到一個小山的山 dǐng 上去了.	He crossed the street and came to the top of a small hill.
Bái:	他從山 dǐng 往下看, 一定很有意思.	It must be very interesting if he looks down from the top of the hill.

張:	對了. 那個城裡的 fēngjǐng 很好, 有山, 有 chyáu, 有很 gāu 的 lóu, 真好看.	Yes, the scenery is beautiful in town. There are hills, bridges and very tall buildings, it's really pretty.
Bái:	他在山 dǐng 上 syōusyi 了一會兒麼?	Did he take a rest on top of the hill?
張:	他 syōusyi 了一會兒.	Yes, he rested for a while.
Bái:	他下了山就到甚麼地方去了?	Where did he go after he came down the hill?
張:	到了車最多的十字路 kǒu 兒. 那兒不 dàn 有 dyàn 車, 也有 mǎ 車.	He came to an intersection where the traffic was heaviest. There were not only street cars but also horse wagons.
Bái:	他還往前走麼?	Did he go any further?
張:	他又走了一會兒, 到了一 tyáu 河的邊兒上, 在那兒他看見了很多 fān 船.	Yes, he walked for a while and came to the bank of a river. He saw many sail boats.
Bai:	真好 syàng 在畫兒裡頭 shr 的.	This place is really like a picture.
張:	他想他還得去	He realized that he had to go

作事，所以他就往那個 yín 行那兒走.	to work, so he walked toward the bank.
Bái: 他回去的時候在路上看見甚麼了?	What did he see on his way back?
張: 看見一個山 dùng, 火車從山 dùng 裡頭出來.	He saw a tunnel from which a train emerged.
Bái: 看見 tyě 路了沒有?	Did he see the railway tracks?
張: 看見了. 他 shǔ 了 shǔ, tyě 路上一 gùng 有三 jyé 火車.	He saw them. He counted and saw there were three cars on the tracks.

Vocabulary

108.	chí	騎	V:	ride, straddle, (on horse, bicycle, etc.)
109.	dǐsya	底下	N:	underneath
110.	dz̀syíngchē	自行車	N:	bicycle
111.	fānchwán	帆船	N:	sailboat
112.	fēngjǐng	風景	N:	scenery, view, landscape
113.	gūngywán	公園	N:	public park
114.	hǎusyàng	好像	V: A:	resemble a good deal like, just as though, it seems that
114.1	hǎusyàng...shrde	好像……似的	IE:	like, resemble, look as if
114.2	syàng	像	V: SV: N:	like, resemble be similar photograph
115.	jyé	節	M:	section (train)
116.	lùdēng	路燈	N:	street light
117.	mǎ	馬	N:	horse
117.1	mǎchē	馬車	N:	horse wagon, carriage
118.	sànbù	散步	V:	to stroll, take a walk
119.	shāndǐng(r)	山頂(兒)	N:	mountain top
120.	shāndùng	山洞	N:	cave (tunnel)

121.	shǔ	數	V:	count
122.	swéirán	雖然	MA:	although, in spite of
123.	syànmù	羨慕	V:	admire
124.	syōusyi	休息	V: N:	rest, take a vacation rest
125.	tíng	停	V:	stop, park (a car)
126.	túngsyàng	銅像	N:	bronze statue
127.	tyělù	鐵路	N:	railway

III. Grammar Analysis

1. Adverbs in associated pairs

A Chinese sentence may have two clauses: a main clause and a dependent clause. Connective adverbs in associated pairs are used, with one in the dependent clause and the other in the main clause. Sometimes the adverb in the dependent clause may be omitted. And sometimes instead of a pair, one adverb is used twice: once in the dependent clause and again in the main clause. These are called reduplicated pairs.

Búdàn....., yě.......	Not only....., but also......
Yàushr...., jyou......	If..........., then..........
Yīnwei...., swóyi.....	Because......, therefore.....
Swéirán..., kěshr.....	Although....., nevertheless..
Yàubúshr.., jyòushr...	If not......., then..........
Yī........, jyòu......	As soon as..., then..........

.........., kěshr.....	............., but...........
Syān......, dzài......	First........, then..........
.........., jyòu......	............., then..........
.........., swóyi.....	............., so............
.........., tsái......	Not until...., ...

Shr̀......., shr̀......?	Is it........, or is it.....?
Háishr...., háishr...?	Is it........, or is it.....?
Hwòshr...., hwòshr....	Either......., or............
Yòu(shr).., yòu(shr)..	Both........., and...........

Búdàn tā méilái, tā tàitai yě méilái.	Not only he didn't come, his wife also didn't come.
Yǐnwei nǐ lái, swǒyi wǒ yě lái.	Because you are coming, I am coming too.
Swéirán tā hěn hǎu, kěshr méiyou chyán.	Although he is a fine man, he is poor.
Yàubúshr tā bùnéng lái, jyòushr tā bùkěn lái.	If it is not that he can't come, then it is that he is unwilling to come.
Tā yì shwō, wǒ jyòu dǔngle.	I understood as soon as he explained it.
Tā syān shwō, nǐ dzài shwō.	First let him talk, then you can talk.
Wǒmen chr̄le fàn tsái dzǒude.	We didn't go until we had eaten.
Shr̀ dzwò hwǒchē chyù, shr̀ dzwò chwán chyù?	(Are you) going by train or by boat?
Hwòshr dzài jyā chr̄ Jūnggwo fàn, hwòshr dàu fàngwǎr chyù chr̄ wàigwo fàn.	(We will) either have a Chinese meal at home or go to a restaurant for a western meal.
Tā yòushr yàu nyànshū, yòushr yàu syědz̀. Jēn máng.	He has to read and to write characters. He is really busy.

Translate the following:

1) He wouldn't do it for me because I didn't pay him.

2) I'll be there, although I may be late.

3) If I had had the money, I would have bought the new car.

4) I am not going to buy it even if it is inexpensive.

5) Mr. Wáng has not come. If it isn't that his car is out of order, then it is that he is sick.

6) Which one do you want, this one or that one?

7) Either one will be all right, this one or that one.

8) He isn't willing to do it, Besides he can't do it.

2. Syàng and hǎusyàng

Syàng and hǎusyàng mean either physical resemblance in the narrow sense or "it seems" or "it probably is" in the broader sense. Either one can take "shr̀de" or "de yàngdz" at the end of the sentence. Syàng may be modified by such adverbs as hěn or hǎu. In the latter case syàng becomes hǎusyàng. Therefore hǎusyàng cannot be preceded by hěn, because it already has an adverb hǎu. Syàng and hǎusyàng are similar in use, except that hǎusyàng can not be used as a stative verb, but syàng can.

2.1 As a stative verb

Tāmen lyǎngge rén hěn syàng.	These two resemble each other very much.
(not: Tāmen lyǎngge rén hěn hǎusyàng.)	
Jèige fángdz búsyàng nèige fángdz.	This house doesn't resemble that house.
(not: Jèige fángdz bùhǎusyàng nèige fángdz.)	

2.2 As a functive verb

Tā hěn syàng tā fùchin.	He resembles his father very much.

Tā hǎusyàng tā fùchin.	He resembles his father.

2.3 Syàng as an auxiliary verb and hǎusyàng as a movable adverb

Tā syàng hěn yǒuchyán de yàngdz.	He is seemingly very rich.
Hǎusyàng tā shr hěn yǒuchyán shrde.	He is seemingly very rich.

Translate the following:

1) The door seems to be closed.

2) Those two students certainly look alike.

3) He looks like a school teacher.

4) He seems to be unwilling to go, but I think he will go if you ask him.

5) He looks as if he hadn't shaved.

6) That airplane seems to be flying very fast.

IV. Pattern Drill

Pattern 1

A. Adverbs in associated pairs

不dàn...... 也.......	not only.....but also
要是....... 就.......	if.....then
因為....... 所以....	since.....(therefore)
Swéirán..... 可是....	although...
要不是..... 就是....	if not.....then
一......... 就......	as soon as....(then) (once)
先......... dzài......	first....then

B. Adverb introducing dependent clause omitted

.... 可是......	.....however......
.... 就.......	.....so, (then)....
.... 所以.....	.....therefore....
.........tsái	.....then (only then).....

C. Adverbs in reduplicated pairs

是.......... 是	is it.....or.....?
還是........還是.....	is it.....or.....?
hwò是...... hwò是.....	is it.....or.....?
又是...... 又是.....	both.....and......

Examples:

1) Swéirán 他很tsūng明, 可是他不念書.	Although he is very bright, he doesn't study.

2) 要是你不願意去，就不去． — If you don't want to go, don't go.

3) 你真 tsūng 明，一看就懂了． — You are really clever, you (can) understand as soon as you see it.

4) 他没念書，所以他不會． — He didn't study, so he doesn't know how.

5) 是 lyóudànpàu lìhai，是山 pàu lìhai? — Is the howitzer or the mountain gun more powerful?

Exercise:

a. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) As soon as you left here he came in.

2) Although I did not understand what he just said, I knew he was very happy.

3) Are we going to use your camera or his?

4) Because it was too late and there were no more trolley cars, I had to take a taxi home.

5) Is your camera larger than mine, or is mine larger than yours?

6) You can first talk to his father, then talk to him.

7) Although his bedroom is not big, it is big enough for one person.

8) That street car operator is both young and intelligent.

b. Render the following into English orally:

1) Swéirán dzài shŕdžlùkǒur méiyou jǐngchá, kěshr nǐ yě bùkéyi kāichē kāide hěn kwài.

2) Jèige dēng búlyàng, kěshr bǐ méiyou dēng hǎu.

3) Nǐ syān hē yìdyar tāng, dzai chr̄fàn ba.

4) Yǐnwei tā shwō nǐ búchyù, swóyi wǒ yě méichyu.

5) Wǒ yi chr̄le fàn jyòu láile.

6) Nǐ shr̀ hē kāifēi ne , shr̀ hē chá ne?

7) Chwān hwáng yǐshangde shŕhou, shr̀ dài hwáng màudz hǎukàn ne, shr̀ dài hēi màudz hǎukàn ne?

8) Nǐ méichyù, swóyi nǐ bùjr̄dàu.

Pattern 2

The use of syàng and 好 syàng

A. Syàng used as a stative verb:

你跟你弟弟很 syàng.	You resemble your younger brother very much.

B. Syàng used as a functive verb:

你跟你弟弟都 syàng 你母親麼 ?	Do both you and your younger brother resemble your mother?

C. Syàng used as auxiliary verb:

他 syàng 很 kèchi 的 yàng-子.	He seems to be very polite.

D. 好 syàng used as functive verb:

他 好 syàng 他 jyějye.	He looks like (resembles) his elder sister.

E. 好 syàng used as an adverb:

好 syàng 他不 syǐhwan 去 ba.	It seems that he doesn't like to go, I suppose.

Examples:

1) 這個 nyóunǎi 好 syàng hwài 了.	It seems that this milk has spoiled.

2) 他的上衣很syàng我的.	His coat resembles mine very much.
3) 他syàng很不高興shr的.	He seems to be very unhappy.
4) 你的信syāng裏頭好syàng有很多信shr的. 你去看看ba.	There seem to be quite a few letters in your letter box. Why don't you go take a look.
5) 今天的天chi好syàng不錯.	The weather today seems to be pretty good.
6) 這shwāng wà子好syàng太小了.	This pair of socks seems to have become too small.
7) 你看那個站在十字路kǒu兒的小孩子syàng不syàng王先生的小孩兒.	Take a look and see whether that child standing at the intersection resembles Mr. Wang's child.
8) 他們兩個人不是哥哥弟弟,可是他們真syàng.	The two of them are not brothers. But they sure resemble each other.

Exercise:

a. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) He did not seem to be happy when I told him that his taxi was here.

2) This seems to be a good opportunity for our children to visit the public park.

3) Look at that policeman. Doesn't he look like your elder brother?

4) Watch out! This car seems to be making a right turn.

5) I don't remember very clearly. It seemed to me that the store was by the side of a bank.

6) Your camera looks like one made in Japan, doesn't it?

7) They all look alike. I cannot tell the difference.

8) The bus driver seemed aware of the fact that the police car was behind him. He drove faster and faster.

b. Render the following into English orally:

1) Jīntyan shr̀ nǐ chǐng kè. Kěshr nǐ syàng kèren shrde.

2) Tā búsyàng tā mǔchin, tā syàng tā fùchin.

3) Dzwótyan wǒ lái kàn nǐmen. Nǐmen hǎusyàng hěn máng. Swóyi wǒ méijìnchyu.

4) Wǒmende shàngyī shr̀ dzai yíge pùdz lǐtou mǎide, swóyi hěn syàng.

5) Tsúng tā chwānde yīshang kàn, tā hěn syàng yíge yǒuchyánde rén.

6) Tāmen jyālide rén dōu búsyàng.

7) Wǒ hǎusyàng rènde nèige rén.

8) Wǔkwai chyán yìshwāng wàdz hǎusyàng tài gwèile.

Homework

Answer the following questions:

1) Gūngywán lǐtou yǒu shémma?

2) Lùdēng shr̀ shémma yìsz?

3) Měigwo yǒu mǎchē ma?

4) Dzài Měigwo yǒu rén jùdzai shāndùng lǐtou ma?

5) Dzwò fānchwán kéyi dàu Jūnggwo chyù ma?

6) Shr̀ chí mǎ rúngyi, shr̀ chí dz̀syíngchē rúngyi?

7) Nǐ dàugwo shémma fēngjǐng hǎude dìfang?

8) Měigwo yǒumíngde gūngywán dzài nǎr? Dōu jyàu shémma?

9) Nĭ shr̀ syàng fùchin, shr̀ syàng mŭchin?

10) Shr̀ chí mă kwài, shr̀ chí dz̀syíngchē kwài?

V. READING

A. Characters (Nos.249-256)

(Simplified characters in parentheses are used in mainland China)

249.	幾 几	jǐ	NU:	several; how many? (expecting only a few in the answer)	幾個人?-	how many people (assuming less than ten)?
					好幾個 -	quite a few
					十幾塊錢-	ten-odd dollars
250.	塊 (块)	kwài	M:	piece, lump, (measure for dollars)	兩塊táng -	two pieces of candy
					一塊兒 -	together
					四塊錢 -	four dollars
251.	次	tsz̀	M:	a time, occasion	有一次 -	once upon a time
					上次 -	last time
					下次 -	next time
					一天一次 -	once every day
252.	歲 嵗 岁	swèi	M:	year(s) old	幾歲了?-	how old (are you)?...assuming less than ten
					八十四歲了 -	84 years of age
253.	數 数	shù	AF:	number	歲數 -	age
					[多大歲數?-	how old (are you)? used for age over 10]
		[shǔ]	[V:	count]		

254. 長 长	cháng	SV:	be long	很長 -	very long
				長極了 -	extremely long
				天長了 -	the days have lengthened
	jǎng	BF:	head (of an organization)	bān 長 -	squad leader
				pái 長 -	platoon leader
		[V: to grow]			
255. 短	dwǎn	SV:	be short	短不短? -	(Is it) short or not?
				短好些 -	a good deal shorter
256. 條 条	tyáu	M:	(for rivers, roads, fish, etc.)	兩條船 -	two boats
				那條街 -	that street
				這條路 -	this road

B. Sentences

1. 你有幾塊錢?
2. 我有十幾塊錢.
3. 你一天看幾次書?
4. 看十次,每次看十分鐘.
5. 你多少歲了?
6. 我三十歲了.

7. 看你的yàng子不syàng三十多歲的.

8. Syèsye. 我的歲數是真的.

9. 你數一數這條街有幾個路dēng?

10. 我數了,就有六、七個.

11. 這條河bǐ那條長麼?

12. Bǐ那條短一點兒.

13. 現在你等着你女兒呢,還是你兒子呢?

14. 小弟弟帶他到街上去玩兒玩兒ba.

15. 幫人忙不dàn別人gāusyìng, 自己也gāusyìng,

16. 你找張中校麼? 他正在書房寫着信呢.

17. 要是你已經看了報了,就別dzài買了.

18. 因為你對我很好,所以我應當給你作事.

19. 他喜歡喝酒,每天夜裡兩點鐘tsái回家

20. Swéirán 中文不太容易,可是學生都願意學.

21. 要不是你說錯了話,就是他太lèi;所以他走了.

22. 母親告訴我:「先把舊的用了,再買新的.」

23. 張先生開車開的好極了.又快又小心.

24. 學校打算請一個又懂中文又懂法文的先生.

25. 哥哥最愛聽笑話,最不喜歡畫畫兒.

26. 在河邊兒上看看山看看fān船真有意思.

27. 父親在書鋪買了好syē筆,好sye信紙送給朋友.

28. 喜歡打jàng的人,看見河裡的大魚吃小魚,他們dzěn麼想?

29. 在朋友家吃wán了飯,離開飯jwō站起來的時候,可以說:「菜真好,我吃bǎu了,你們慢吃ba.」

30. 有的小孩子睡着覺,手裡還拿着玩兒

的東西.

31. 誰問你:「幾千年以前人都住在山 dùng 裡,你聽說過麼?」?

32. 這個人 bǐ 我更 bèn,lyán東西南北都不 chǐngchu.

33. 「你很難看!」這句話可真不能跟太太小 jye 們說.

34. 「住」字好 syàng 「往」字,可是意思不一 yàng.

35. 那個房子的後門關着呢,前門又開不開.

36. 你女兒幾歲 tsái 會說自己的姓跟名字?

VI. WRITING

A. Writing (Characters 161-165)

叫 門 問

(呌)

姓 名

B. Radicals

1. 口 (mouth, 30) as in: 叫, 呌
2. 門 (gate, 169) as the word: 門 and as in: 問
3. 女 (woman, 38) as in: 姓
4. 口 (mouth, 30) as in: 名

Lesson 48

1. Structural Dialogue

1.	A:	明天 早上 我們 到 舊 jīn 山 去, 得 早早兒的 走.	We are going to San Francisco tomorrow morning, and we have to leave early.
	B:	為甚麼	Why?
	A:	明天 是 Lǐbài 六, 車 一定 多.	Tomorrow is Saturday, the traffic will certainly be heavy.
	B:	那麼 早 到 那兒, 作 甚麼?	What shall we do if we get there early?
	A:	早早兒的 到了, 可以 把 車 tíng 在 中國 城.	We can park our car in Chinatown if we arrive there early.
	B:	到了 中國 城, 先 作 甚麼?	What shall we do first after we have arrived in Chinatown?
	A:	好好兒的 吃 點兒 中國 飯.	We can enjoy a good Chinese meal.
	B:	吃 wán 了 飯 作 甚麼?	What shall we do after eating?
	A:	慢慢兒的 在 街上	We can slowly take a walk on the streets.

L. 48 走一走.

	B:	為甚麼?	Why?
	A:	我們 可以 好好兒的 看一看 鋪子裏的 東西.	We can enjoy some window shopping.
	B:	我們 回來的 時候 開車 要 慢慢兒的 開 麼?	Do we have to drive slowly on our way back?
	A:	我 想 得 慢慢兒的 開.	I think we have to drive slowly.
2.	A:	你 為甚麼 chwān的 這麼 chíchigwaigwài 的?	Why are you dressed in such a peculiar way?
	B:	我 chwān 的 一點兒 也 不 chígwài. Gānganjìngjìng-的 衣shang 有 甚麼 chígwài 呢?	There is nothing peculiar about the way I am dressed. What is so peculiar about my clean clothes?
	A:	你chwān 的 衣shang 不是 bái 天 chwān的.	The clothes you are wearing are not for daytime wear.
	B:	是 甚麼 時候 chwān的?	What time are they worn?

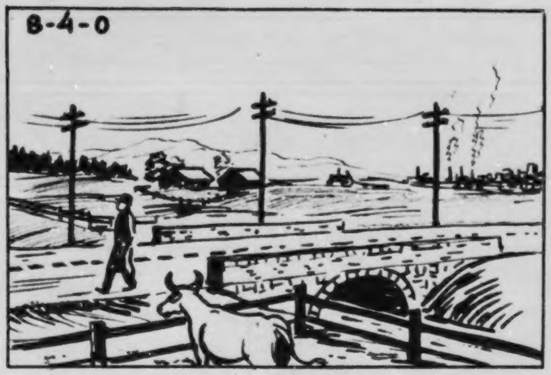
A:	你 chwān 的是睡衣, 明明 baibái 的是睡覺的時候 chwān 的.	You are wearing pajamas which are clearly for bedtime wear.
B:	Syèsye 你. 我以後白天不 chwān 了.	Thank you. I won't wear them in the daytime anymore.
3. A:	你應當八點鐘來, 為甚麼來晚了?	You should have been here at eight o'clock. Why are you late?
B:	起來以後事 ching 很多	I had very many things to do after getting up.
A:	都作甚麼了?	What did you do?
B:	先 syǐ 了 syi lyǎn.	First I washed my face.
A:	還作甚麼了?	What else?
B:	又 gwā 了 gwā hú 子.	Had a shave.
A:	還作甚麼了?	What else?
B:	syǐ 了 syǐ dzǎu.	Took a bath.
A:	還作甚麼了?	What else?
B:	Shwā 了 shwā yá.	Brushed my teeth.
A:	還作甚麼了?	What else?
B:	看了看報.	Read the newspapers.

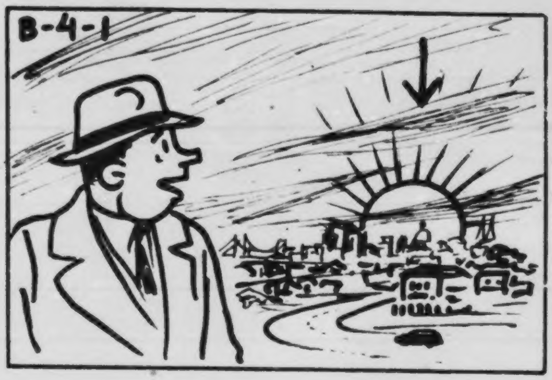
	A:	還作甚麼了?	What else?
	B:	吃了吃早飯.	Had my breakfast.
	A:	真作了不少事. 明天你應當早早兒的起來.	You certainly did a lot of things. Tomorrow you should get up earlier.
4.	A:	今天晚上我們去看 Lyóu 小 jye, 你去不去?	We are going to visit Miss Lyóu this evening. Are you coming?
	B:	我不 rènshr 他. 你得給我 jyèshaujyèshau.	I don't know her. You will have to introduce us.
	A:	我一定給你 jyèshau, 可是你得好好的 yùbeiyùbei.	I will certainly introduce you, but you will have to prepare yourself well.
	B:	怎麼 yùbei 呢?	How do I do it?
	A:	Syǐsyi lyǎn, gwāgwā hú 子, 好好兒的打算打算.	Wash your face, have a shave, and do some good planning.
	B:	打算甚麼呢?	Planning what?
	A:	帶多少錢, 在那兒吃飯, 到甚麼地方去喝酒.	Such as how much money to take, where to eat and where to have some drinks

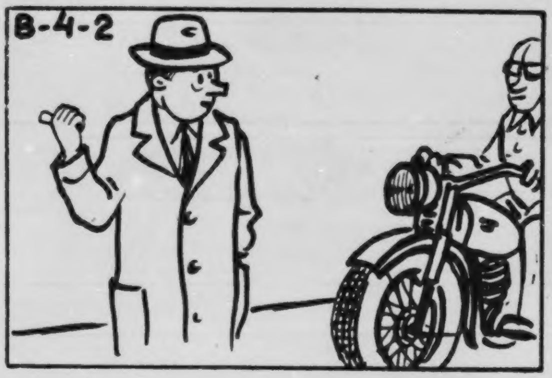
	B:	可是這 syē 事ching我都不懂. 你得好好兒的跟我說說.	But I don't know anything about these matters. You will have to brief me properly.
	A:	好, 我告訴你. Lyóu小jye 真好. 你應當rènshr-rènshr 他. 說話的時候得 kèkechichī .	Fine, I will brief you. Miss Lyóu is really nice. You should know her. You should be polite in talking to her.
	B:	怎麼 kèkechichī 的呢?	Polite in what way?
	A:	話, 要慢慢兒的說.	Talk slowly.
	B:	走路呢?	How about walking?
	A:	在小 jye páng 邊兒慢慢兒的走.	Walking slowly by the side of the lady.
	B:	Syèsye 你. 我就那麼作.	Thank you. I will do it that way.
5.	A:	你要買那個 jàusyàngjī?	Which camera are you going to buy?
	B:	那個 pyányi 我買那個.	I'll buy whichever is cheaper.
	A:	你打算到那兒去 jàusyàng?	Where do you plan to go to take some pictures?
	B:	那兒 fēngjǐng好, 我到那兒去.	I'll go to take some pictures wherever there is beautiful scenery.

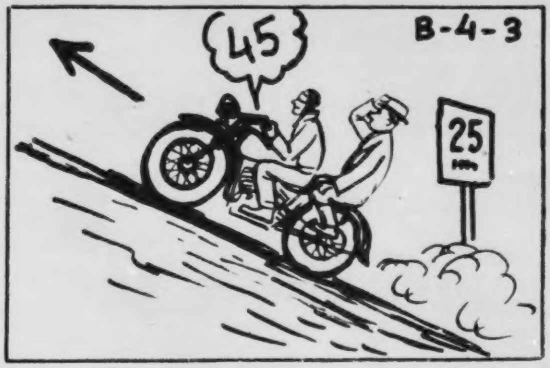
L. 48

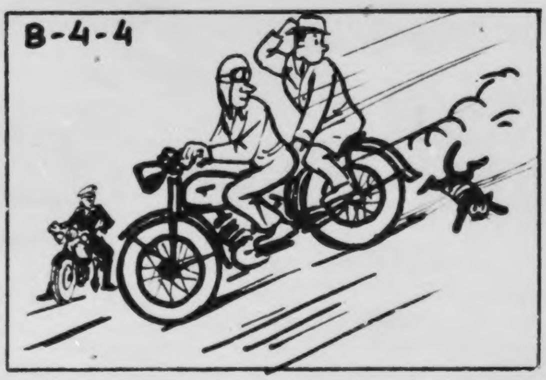
A:	你想 jàu 多少張 syàng?	How many pictures do you want to take?
B:	有多少張, jàu 多少張.	I would like to take as many as I have films.
A:	你喜歡跟誰一塊兒去?	Whom do you like to go with?
B:	誰會開車, 我跟誰去.	I'll go with whoever can drive.

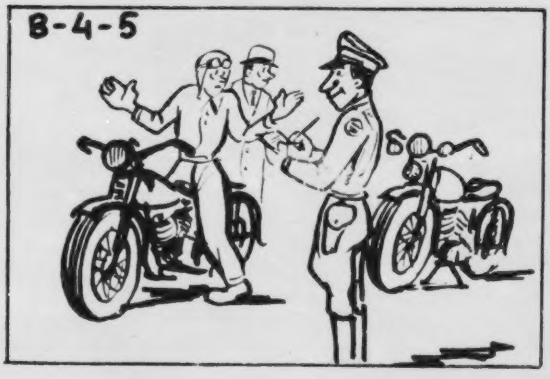

B-4-0

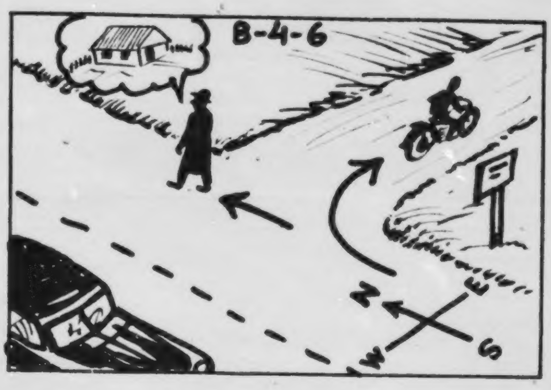

B-4-1


B-4-2

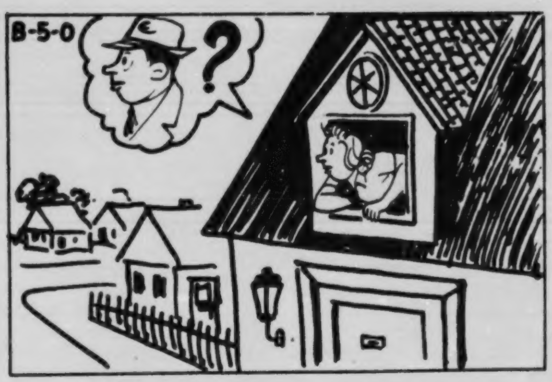

B-4-3
45
25

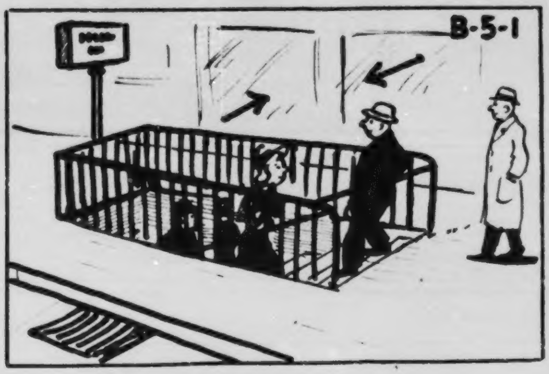

B-4-4

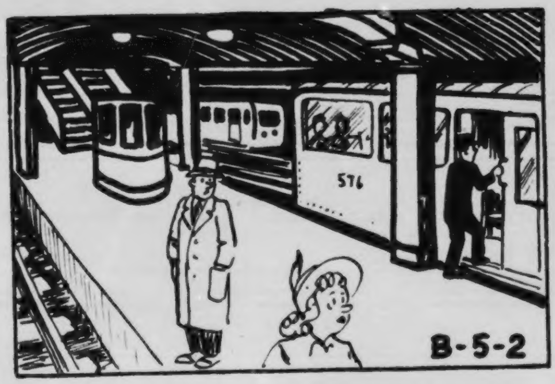

B-4-5

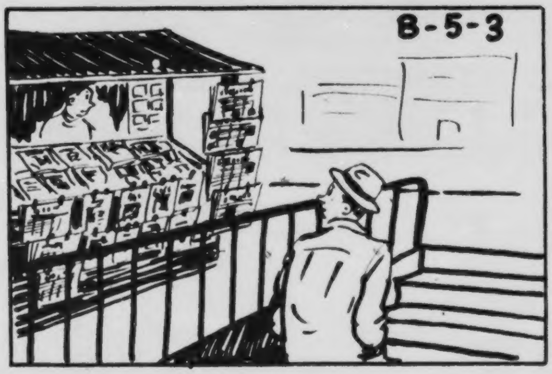

B-4-6
N
E
S
W

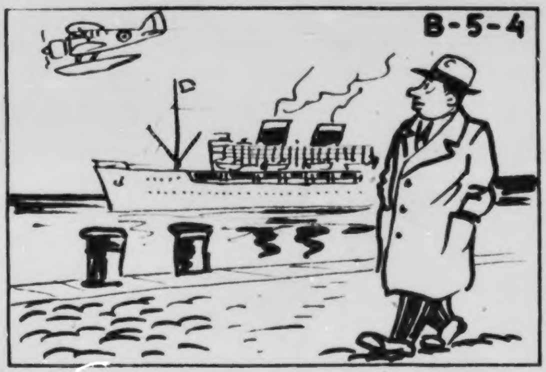
L. 48

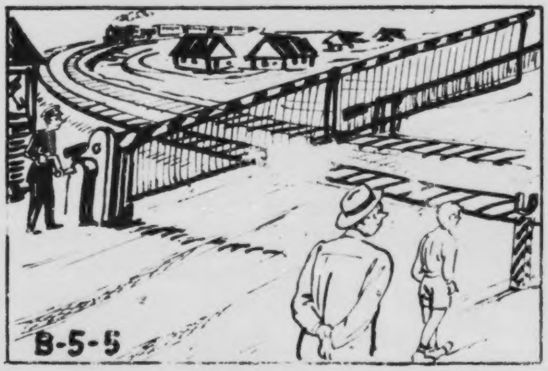


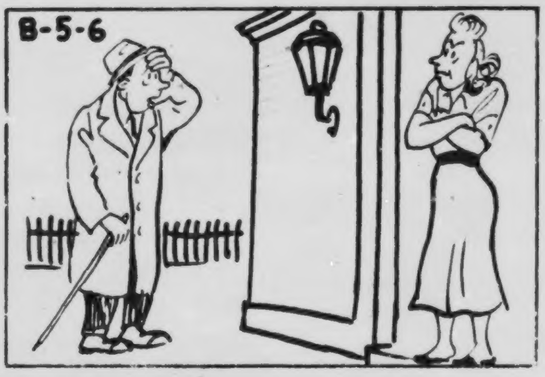












II. Basic Dialogue

1.	Bái:	Hwáng 美生 今天 下wǔ 下了bān, 是不是就回家了?	Did Měishēng Hwáng go home after he left the office this afternoon?
	張:	没有. 他到城外頭, 看看 syāng 下的 fēngjǐng 去了.	No, he didn't. He went out of town to see the view in the country.
	Bái:	他往城外頭走的時候, 太yang lwò 了没有?	Had the sun set at the time he was leaving the city?
	張:	正在往下 lwò. 真好看.	It was right in the midst of the sunset and was really beautiful.
	Bái:	在 syāng下, 他都看見甚麼了?	What did he see in the country?
	張:	有 chyáu, 有 tyě路, 有一頭 nyóu. 他真想在 syāng 下 shūshufufū的住幾天.	He saw a bridge, railway tracks and a cow. He really wishes to enjoy a few days of comfortable living in the country.
	Bái:	可是他得回家. Syāng下又没有 gūnggùng-chì車, 又没有 dyàn 車, dzěn麼 bàn?	But he had to go home. Since there are no buses or street cars in the country, what could he do?

張:	有一個人 chí 着 jīchi-jyǎutà 車來了. 他問那個人可以不可以坐他的車到城裏去.	A man came on a motorcycle. He asked that man whether he could ride with him to town.
Bái:	那個人很好. 他說可以.	That man was very nice and said it was all right.
張:	他就上車了. 他坐在後頭.	He got on the motorcycle and sat behind the man.
Bái:	他們兩個人 chí 一個 jīchi-jyǎutà 車, 上 pwō 的時候, 上得去麼?	When they came to a slope, could they go up with the two of them riding on one motorcycle?
張:	那個車的 jīchi 很好. 上得去.	Yes, they could, because the motorcycle had a good engine.
Bái:	Súdù dzěn 麼 yàng?	What was their speed?
張:	他們應當每小時開二十五 Yīnglǐ, 可是他們開了四十五 Yīnglǐ.	They should have gone twenty-five miles per hour, but they went forty-five.

Bái: 開的太快了 ba.	They were going too fast, I suppose.
張: 對了. 所以下pwō的時候把一jr̄小māu兒jwàngsž了.	That's right. Consequently, when going down a slope, they hit a cat and killed it.
Bái: Jǐngchá看見了麼?	Did a policeman see it?
張: 看見了. Fá了他們二十塊錢. 每chāu過一Yīnglǐ fá 一塊.	Yes, he did. He fined them twenty dollars. There is a dollar fine to every mile over the speed limit.
Bái: 後來他們到了那兒了?	Where did they get to?
張: 後來到了一個十字路kǒu兒. Hwáng美生下了車往北走. 那個人往東去了.	They came to an intersection. Měishēng Hwáng got off the motorcycle and went north on foot. That man went east.
Bái: 要是他回家回的晚, 他太太着jí不着jí?	Would his wife worry if he should get home late?
張: 一定着jí. 所以他得快點兒回家. 他去	Certainly she would worry. Therefore, he had to go home quickly. He went

	坐地下火車，因為地下火車很快.	to take the subway train because it is very fast.
Bái:	他在地下火車站等了半天麼?	Did he wait for a long time at the subway station?
張:	等了一會兒車就來了.	He waited a while and the train came.
Bái:	他下了火車就到了家了麼?	Did he get home right after he got off the train?
張:	還沒到呢. 他下了車跟報tān上的那個賣報的說了幾句話.	No, not right away. He got off the train and talked awhile with the newspaper dealer at the newspaper stand.
Bái:	他經過hǎi邊的時候，看見甚麼了?	What did he see when he passed the beach?
張:	他看見了一條很好看的lwún船還有一個飛機.	He saw a very beautiful steamship and also an airplane.
Bái:	Hǎi邊兒離他家很遠麼?	Is the ocean very far from his house?
張:	不遠. 過了tyě路就	Not far, just on the other side of the railway tracks.

是. 可是他要過tyě路的時候, 火車來了, 所以又dānwù了一會兒.	But as he was crossing the tracks, a train came, and he was again delayed a few minutes.
Bái: 他到了家的時候, 他太太很生chì麼?	Was his wife very mad when he came home?
張: 他太太沒生chì. 他太太人很好. 他願意多晚回來, 就多晚回來.	His wife was not mad. She is very nice. He may come home as late as he wants to.

Vocabulary

128.	bàutāndz	報攤子	N:	newspaper stand
128.1	tāndz	攤子	N:	a stall, as in the market
129.	chāugwo	超過	V:	exceed
130.	dānwu	躭悞	V:	delay, waste (time)
131.	dìsyàhwǒchē	地下火車	N:	subway train
132.	fá	罰	V:	fine, punish
133.	jīchi	機器	N:	engine, machine
134.	jīchi-jyǎutàchē	機器脚踏車	N:	motorcycle
135.	jwàng	撞	V:	collide with, bump, run into
135.1	jwàngsž	撞死	V:	killed through collision
136.	lwò (làu)	落	V:	land, come down, set, fall
137.	lwúnchwán	輪船	N:	steamer
138.	māu(r)	貓	N:	cat
139.	shàngpwō	上坡	VO:	climb a slope
140.	súdù	速度	N:	speed, velocity
141.	syàbān	下班	VO:	class dismissed; office hours are over
142.	syàpwō	下坡	VO:	go down a slope
143.	syǎushŕ	小時	N:	hour (lit.)
143.1	měisyǎushŕ	每小時	A:	per hour
144.	sž	死	V:	die
145.	tóu	頭	M:	(for certain animals, like cow, mule, etc.)

III. Grammar Analysis

1. Reduplicated stative verbs

Stative verbs may be used as adverbs to modify verbs. As adverbs they may be reduplicated. In Peking Mandarin, the reduplicated syllable acquires the high level tone, and a final r is frequently added. The reduplication has little effect on the meaning other than to add a degree of stress. When a two-syllable stative verb is reduplicated, the first syllable is repeated and then the second is repeated, but the reduplicated syllables do not necessarily change to a high level tone and a final r is seldom added.

Wǒ jīntyan dzǎudzāurde chǐlaile.	I got up quite early this morning.
Wǒmen kwàikwārde dzǒu ba.	Let us hurry and go.
Nín mànmārde chr̄.	Take your time and eat well.
Tā shémma shr̀ching dōu hǎuhāurde dzwò.	He does his best in everything.
Tā swéisweibyanbyànde mǎile yìdyǎr dūngsyi.	He casually bought a few things.
Wǒ bǎ jèijyan shr̀ching chīngchingchuchūde gàusung tā le.	I told him clearly about this matter.
Tā yàu shūshufufūde dzài syāngsya jù jǐtyān.	He wants to stay comfortably for a few days in the country.

2. Reduplicated functive verbs

Most functive verbs may be reduplicated, like kànkan (look) and wárwar (play). When a two-syllable functive verb is reduplicated, the whole word is repeated rather than the repeating of the individual syllables as in the case of a stative verb. For reduplicated functive verbs the stress is generally on the first syllable.

Tā yàu dzài jèr syōusyisyōusyi.	He wants to take a rest here.
Wáng Syānsheng, Lǐ Syáujye, wǒ gěi nǐmen jyèshaujyèshau.	Let me introduce you, Mr. Wáng and Miss Lǐ.
Chǐng nǐ děng wǒ yìhwěr, wǒ chyù syísyi lyǎn shūshu tóu.	Please wait for me for a while, I will go and wash my face and comb my hair.
Nèige rén hěn yǒuyìsz, wǒ yàu rènshrrènshr tā.	That man is very interesting and I want to make his acquaintance.

Translate the following using reduplicated stative verbs and functive verbs:

1) You are very tired. You should sit down and rest for a while.

2) Let us drink some tea and read the newspapers.

3) When we get there, let us have a Chinese meal in comfort.

4) If you talk with him politely, I think he'll be very glad to listen.

5) I hope he will finish his work and come home early today.

6) Let us run fast. The bus is about to arrive.

7) Before you go out, please take a bath and have a shave.

3. Inclusive expressions such as "whatever", "whoever", "wherever", "whenever", "however", "whichever", take a two-clause pattern and repeat the same question word in the two clauses.

Nǐ yǒu shémma, wǒ (jyòu) chr̄ shémma.	I'll eat whatever you have.
Shéi syǐhwan chyù, shéi chyù.	Whoever wants to go may go.
Dzěmma rúngyi dzěmma dzwò.	Do it whichever way is easier.
Něige dǐfang rén dwō, wǒ dàu něige dǐfang chyù.	I will go wherever there are many people.
Nǐ jyàu tā dzǒu dwó ywǎn, tā dzǒu dwó ywǎn.	He will go as far as you tell him.
Nǐ gěi wǒ dwōshau, wǒ yàu dwōshau.	I'll take as many as you give me.
Yùng jǐge ná jǐge. Byé dōu nádzǒu.	Take as many as you need. Don't take them all.

Translate the following:

1) I'll go wherever the weather is fine.

2) Whoever has time will go.

3) Please buy whichever is cheaper.

4) Her cooking is as fine as you can ask for.

5) Whatever way she wears it, it is always beautiful.

6) My brother will leave whenever my sister arrives.

IV. Pattern Drill

Pattern 1

Reduplicated stative verbs

A. Reduplicated one-syllable stative verbs used as adverbs:

有一個jīchi-jyǎutà 車來了! 快快兒的過街 ba.	A motorcycle is coming! Let's hurry up and cross the street.

Examples:

1)	你已經 chāu過 súdù 了. 請你慢慢兒的開車.	You have already exceeded the speed limit. Please drive slowly.
2)	Jīchi 好 syàng hwài了.你能好好兒的 tì 我看看麽?	It seems that the engine (machinery) has broken down. Can you look at it carefully for me?
3)	明天上bān bǐ píngcháng 早一小時.我得早早兒的起來.	Work starts tomorrow one hour earlier than usual. I have to get up very early.
4)	他是一個 hwài 人.最好離開他遠遠兒的.	He is a bad man. It will be best to stay far away from him.

Exercise:

Orally fill in each of the following blanks with the reduplicated form of the stative verb indicated below:

1) Chr̄băule yĭhou, ________pău.
(màn)

2) Tāmen dzài gūngywánli ________sànbù.
(màn)

3) Nèige bīng ràng Lyánjǎng fágwo, swóyi ________dzwòshr̀le.
(hǎu)

4) Shàngpwō, syàpwōde shŕhou, tàitai dzai pángbyār gàusung wǒ: "________kāichē a!"
(hǎu)

5) ________jwēishang tā, yàuburán jyou dānwùle.
(kwài)

6) Lìkè jyou syàbānle. Chǐng nǐ ________bǎ jèike shū nyànwánle.
(kwài)

7) Tīngshwō dzwèi yǒumíngde lwúnchwán jīntyan dàu. Tāmen ________jyou láile.
(dzǎu)

8) Háidz dōu shwèijyàule. Wǒmen ________dzǒujinchyu ba.
(chīng)

B. Reduplicated two-syllable stative verbs used as adverbs:

他 chǐngchingchuchūde 告訴 jǐnchá, 他是 dzěn 麼 jwàngsž 那頭 nyóu 的.	He told the policeman in detail how (it was that) he ran into that cow.

Examples:

1) 那 sye 孩子 kèkechichī 的把我們的 māu 送回來了.	Those children very politely returned to us our cat.
2) 我 swéisweibyanbyàn 的在報 tān 子買了幾張報.	I casually bought a few papers from the newsstand.
3) 他們 gāugausyingsyìng 的上了地下火車就回家了.	They boarded the subway merrily and returned home.

Exercise:

Orally fill in each of the following blanks with the reduplicated form of the stative verb as indicated below:

1) Wǒ yàu ______ (shūfu) dzài dzǎupénli syǐ yíge dzǎu.

2) Tā ______ (chǐngchu) yùng Jūngwén shwōle yíge syàuhwa.

3) Tā ______ (swéibyàn) gěi wǒ hwàle yìjāng hwàr.

4) Tāmen ______ gāusyǐng chíje dz̀syíngchē dàu shāndǐng chyule.

5) Jǐngchá ______ (mǐngbai) gēn sz̄jī shwō měisyǎushŕ bunéng chāugwo èrshrwǔli.

6) Tā dzǔngshr ______ (syǎusyīn) kāichē. Nèilyang chēde jīchi jēn hǎu.

7) Tā ______ (kèchi) wèn wǒ: "Tsúng jèr dàu yínháng chyù wàng nán dzǒu syíng ma?"

Pattern 2

Reduplicated functive verbs

A. Reduplicated one-syllable verbs:

昨天我 chí 了(一)chí 那個 mǎ, 今天想 dzài chí (一) chí.	I took a ride on that horse yesterday. I feel like riding it again today.

Examples:

1) 我們 gāngtsái 到山dùng 裏頭去走了(一)走.	Just a while ago we took a walk in the cave.
2) 坐 fān 船看(一)看 hǎi 邊兒的 fēngjǐng fēicháng 有意思.	It is very interesting to take a ride on a sailboat and look at the scenery along the shore.
3) 他 jwàng 了那個 túngsyàng, tíng 了(一) tíng 車, 就跑了.	After he ran into the bronze statue, he stopped the car for a second and then left the scene.

4) Mèimei 想玩兒玩兒那個小 māur.

Little sister wants to play with the kitten.

Exercise:

Orally fill in each of the following blanks with the reduplicated form of the functive verb as indicated below:

1) Nǐ dàu bàutāndz chyu ______ (kàn) wǎnshangde bàu chūlaile méiyou.

2) Wǒ lèijíle, shàngle dìsyàhwǒchē wǒ dǎswan ______ (shwèijyàu).

3) Nèige jīchijyǎutàchē, tā ______ (chí) jyou màigei wǒ le.

4) Nǐ gěi tā kǎude nèijr jǐ, tā ______ chr̄ jyou rēngle.

5) Wǒ ______ (chōuyān), ______ (hējyǒu) jyòu bǎ shŕhou dānwule.

6) Bānjǎng fá wǒ le, yīnwei wǒ shàngkède shŕhou ______ (chànggēr).

B. Reduplicated two-syllable verbs:

明天有一位很 lihai 的先生來教我們. 我得 yùbei-yùbei.

Tomorrow there will be a very strict teacher coming to teach us. I've got to make some preparations.

Examples:

1) Tíng 一會兒車 ba. 天太 rè. Jīchi 也得 syōusyisyōusyi.

Let us stop the car for a while. The weather is too hot. The engine also has to have a rest.

2) Gāng 來了一位新先生. 下 bān 以後,我給你們 jyèshaujyèshau.

A new teacher has just come. I'll introduce you to him after office hours.

3) 他父親 ràng 人打 sz 了. 以後的事 ching 他應當好好兒的打算打算.

His father was killed by somebody. He should figure out how he should handle future affairs.

Exercise:

Orally fill in each of the following blanks with the reduplicated form of the functive verb as indicated below:

1) Syàwude shū wǒ hái méikàn ne. Wǒ syàndzài__________. (yùbei)

2) Jīntyan yìtyān nǐ měisyǎushŕ chàbudwō kāi bāshrlǐ. Kwài__________ba. (syousyi)

3) Wǒ syǎng tì nèiwei syáujye jàujau syàng. Nǐ kéyi gěi wǒ__________ma? (jyeshau)

4) Nèiwei shr̀ shr̀jyeshang yǒumíngde rén nǐ yàu__________ tā ma? (rènshr)

Pattern 3

Question words used as indefinites in the inclusive expressions

那兒 fēngjǐng 好, 我們到那兒去玩兒.

We will go to play wherever there is good scenery.

Examples:

1) 誰開車 chāu 過 súdù, jǐngchá fá誰.

The policeman will fine whoever exceeds the speed limit.

2) 你喜歡那個 nàu 鐘, 我給你買那個 nàu 鐘.

I'll buy for you whichever alarm clock you like.

3) Dzěn 麼方byan, dzěn麼做.

Do whatever is convenient.

4) 你有幾個房子就出-dzū幾個房子.	You may rent out as many houses as you have.
5) Yíng 長要多麼長的fúchyáu, 工 bīng 就 dā 多麼長的 fúchyáu.	Whatever length of a ponton the battalion commander wants, the engineers will build it (for him).

Exercise:

Orally complete each of the following answers, using the question word contained in the previous clause:

Ex: Nǐ syànmu shémma rén?
Shémma rén néng dzwòshr̀, wǒ syànmu shémma rén.

1) Nèiwei syáujye syǐhwan shéi?
Shéi ài nyànshū, ______________________.

2) Nèige chíbīng ài chí shémma mǎ?
Shémma mǎ pǎude kwài, __________________.

3) Nǎrde fángdz pyányi?
Nǎr rén shǎu, _________________.

4) Nǐ ywànyi dàu něige gūngywán chyu sànbù?
Něige gūngywánde shù dwō,________________________.

5) Nǐ dǎswan měisyǎushŕ kāi dwōshau Yīnglǐ?
Jèige chéng ràng wǒmen kāi dwōshau Yīnglǐ,________.

6) Nǐ měifēnjūng syě jǐge dz̀?
Syānsheng jyàu wǒ měifēnjūng syě jǐge dz̀,__________.

7) Nèijyan shr̀ching dzěmma bàn?
Nèijyan shr̀ching dzěmma rúngyi,_____________.

8) Měigwo tàitai dzwòfàn,dzěmma dzwò?
Měigwo tàitai dzwòfàn,dzěmma hǎuchr̄____________.

Homework

A. Read the following story out loud several times:

Wǒ syàle kè,cháng dàu dìsyàhwǒchējàn wǒ fùchinde bàutāndz chyù bāngmáng. Yǒu yíwèi kèren měitsž lái mǎi bàude shŕhou lǎu ài gēn wǒ tántan, shwōshwo syàuhwa. Tā jřdau wǒ hěn syǐhwan jīchìjyǎutàchē, kěshr fùchin méi chyán gěi wǒ mǎi.

Yǒu yityān yíjyà jīchìjyǎutàchē fàngdzai wǒmende bàutāndz chyántou. Shàngtou yǒu yìjāng jř syěje:"Syǎu Péngyou: súdù měisyǎushŕ byé chāugwo èrshrwǔlǐ. Lyán syǎumāur yě byé jwàngsz yìjř!" Wǒ yí kàn jyòu jřdau shéi sùngláide. Wǒ syǎng dzěmma néng shwō jèige shřjye méiyou hǎu rén ne?

B. Repeat the following sentences out loud. For statements which are false, write correct answers in parentheses provided. (If using a tape recorder, repeat true statements. For false statements insert correct answers.)

1) Wǒ syàle kè cháng dàu dìsyàhwǒchējàn fùchìnde bàutāndz chyù bāngmáng. ( ).

2) Yǒu yíwèi kèrén měitsž lái mǎibàude shŕhou lǎu bùgēn wǒ shwōhwà. ( ).

3) Tā jřdau wǒ hěn syǐhwan dżsyíngchē. ( ).

4) Yǒu yìtyān yíjyà jīchìjyǎutàchē fàngdzai wǒmende bàutāndz chyántou.( ).

5) Shàngtou yǒu yijāng jř syěje: "Súdù měisyǎushŕ byé chāugwo wǔshrèrlǐ. ( ).

6) Shàngtou hái syěje: "Jwàngszle syǎumāur búyàujǐn.( ).

V. READING

A. Characters (Nos.257-263)

257.	忘	wàng	V: forget	忘了 -have forgotten 没忘 - didn't forget 容易忘 - easy to forget
258.	怎	dzěn	BF: how? in what way? why? how is it that?	怎麼?- how? why? 怎麼没去?-why didn't(you) go? 怎麼了 -what's happened? 怎麼樣?-how about....? how's everything?
259.	樣 (样)	yàng	M: kind,sort,way	一樣 - same, alike 樣子 - style, appearance, sample
260.	辦 办	bàn	V: manage:carry out	怎麼辦?-what can be done about it?
261.	完	wán	V: finish	完了 -finished

			PV:(indicates end or completion of the action)	唱完了 -finished singing 完不了 -can't be finished
262.	些	syē	NU: plural number M: plural measure	好些人-a good many people 這些- these 那些- those 有些人- some people
263.	情	ching	BF: 事情 (thing, in the sense of affair, event)	事情- thing,(in the sense of affair, event)

B. Sentences

1. 那件事情你辦了麼?
2. 還沒呢?
3. 你忘了麼?
4. 沒忘. 因為事情太多, 沒作完.
5. 你辦完了甚麼事情?
6. 買東西, 寫信, 看報.
7. 買了幾樣兒東西?
8. 五樣兒. 有 ròu, 菜, 茶, táng 跟點心.
9. 買了幾樣兒點心?
10. 跟上回一樣, 就買了兩樣.
11. 時候已經到了, 為甚麼你還慢慢兒的走?
12. 請你明明 baibái 的告訴他, 上 kè 別寫信.
13. 這些事情今天還完不了, 誰願意幫幫忙.
14. 你那件大衣的樣子跟王小 jye 的一樣.
15. 我們說說話, 唱唱歌兒, 一會兒就到

地下火車站了.

16. 怎麼容易,怎麼辦, 甚麼法子都行.

17. 他正在報 tān 子前頭等着你呢.

18. 現在最快的火車每小時走多少 lǐ, 我忘了.

C. Story

有一個人, 姓張, 叫大明. 他不 dàn 不會辦事, bìngchyě 也不會說話. 他說的話, 誰聽見誰就生 chì.

他們家裏頭的事情, 張太太老不叫他辦. 因為他有的時候辦不好, 有的時候辦不完, 有的時候他把他要作的事情忘了.

有一天, 張太太的母親 bìng 了. 張太太有好些事情要辦, 所以不能去看他母親.

張大明說：「我 tì 你去，怎麼樣？」張太太說：「好極了．可是你最好少說話，看看就回來．」

張大明就去了．等一會兒，他哭着跑回來了．跟張太太說：「你看，我去看看你母親，你哥哥弟弟不dàn不syèsye我，bìngchyě還打我．」

張太太說：「你說甚麼了？」張大明說：「我沒說甚麼話，就說了一句．」張太太說：「一句甚麼話？」張大明說：「我問你母親sž的時候，喜歡chwān甚麼樣兒的衣shang？」張太太聽了很生chì，就說：「你真不會說話，當rán他們要打你．明天我請幾個老朋友來吃飯，你聽聽他們怎麼說話，跟他們學一學．」

VI. WRITING

A. Writing (Characters 166-170)

誰　筆　紙

張　山

B. Radicals

1. 言 (words,149) as in: 誰
2. 竹 (bamboo, 118) as in: 筆
3. 糸 (silk, 120) as in: 紙
4. 弓 (a bow, 57) as in: 張
5. 山 (mountain, 46) as the word: 山

LESSON 49

I. Structural Dialogue

1.	A:	今天早上你的 nàu 鐘 syǎng 了麽?	Did your alarm clock go off this morning?
	B:	真 chígwài, 沒 syǎng.	It was really strange, it didn't go off.
	A:	Píngcháng syǎng 不 yǎng?	Does it go off ordinarily?
	B:	Píngcháng 天天早上七點鐘 syǎng.	Yes, it ordinarily does at seven o'clock in the morning.
	A:	禮拜天早上你的 nàu 鐘也 syǎng 麽?	Does your alarm clock go off on Sunday mornings?
	B:	禮拜天早上我的 nàu 鐘不 syǎng。	No, my alarm clock does not go off on Sunday mornings.
2.	A:	你去看你的女朋友以前, 你 gwā hú 子麽?	Do you shave before you go to see your girl friend?
	B:	當 rán 要 gwā hú 子.	I certainly have to.
	A:	你跟你女朋友在街上走的時候, 誰在	When you are walking on the street with your girl friend, who walks

		外頭走，誰在裏頭走?	on the outside and who on the inside?
	B:	我懂. 我應當在外頭走, 他應當在裏頭走.	I know what you mean. I should walk on the outside and she on the inside.
	A:	你送他回去的時候, 你 ti 他開門麼?	When you take her home, do you open the door for her?
	B:	我 kèkechichī 的 ti 他開門, 還要問問他, 甚麼時候可以再出去 wán 兒.	Yes, I open the door politely for her and ask her when we can go out again.
3.	A:	你每天上幾小時的 bān?	How many hours a day do you work at the office?
	B:	我們每天上八小時的 bān.	We work eight hours a day at the office.
	A:	你多少天到 hǎi 邊兒上玩兒一次?	How often do you go to the beach?

	B:	我每lǐbài去一次。	I go once every week.
	A:	你每月到舊jīn山去幾次？	How often do you go to San Francisco in a month?
	B:	每月去兩次，也就是每兩個lǐbài去一次.	I go twice a month, that is to say once every two weeks.
	A:	每年Lùjyūn給你多少錢？	How much do you get each year from the Army?
	B:	每年Lùjyūn給我兩千多塊.	Each year I am paid over two thousand dollars by the Army.
4.	A:	你今天早上shwā yá shwā了多少時候？	For how long did you brush your teeth this morning?
	B:	Shwā了一分鐘.	I brushed for one minute.
	A:	Syǐ lyǎn, syǐ了幾分鐘？	For how long did you wash your face?
	B:	Syǐ了兩分鐘。	I washed for two minutes.
	A:	Gwā hú子, gwā了幾分鐘？	For how many minutes did you shave?

	B:	Gwā 了 十分鐘.	I shaved for ten minutes.
	A:	Shū 頭, shū 了 幾分鐘?	For how many minutes did you comb your hair?
	B:	Shū 了 三分鐘.	I combed my hair for three minutes.
	A:	為甚麼 用了 那麼 多時候 shū 頭?	Why did you use that much time in combing your hair?
	B:	要不rán shū 不好.	Otherwise, I can't do it well.
5.	A:	一年 以前 你 會 說 中國 話 麼?	Could you speak Chinese a year ago?
	B:	一句 都 不會.	I couldn't speak even one sentence.
	A:	三個 月 以後, 你 就 會 寫 多少 中國 字 了?	How many Chinese characters will you be able to write three months from now?
	B:	我 想 我 可以 寫 五百個 中國 字 了.	I think I will be able to write five hundred Chinese characters.
	A:	三年 以前 你是 中wèi 麼?	Were you a first lieutenant three years ago?

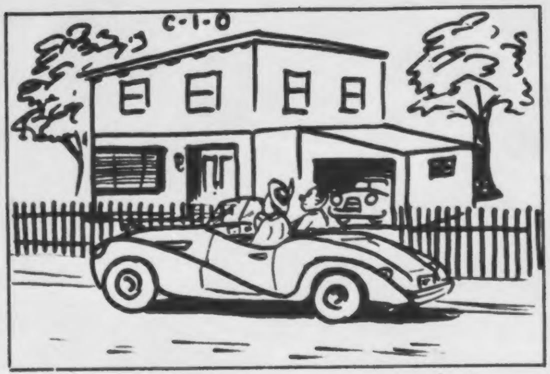
	B:	對了. 三年以前我是中wèi, 六年以前我是少wèi.	Right. I was a first lieutenant three years ago and a second lieutenant six years ago.
	A:	三年以後你就是中校了麼?	Will you be a lieutenant colonel three years from now?
	B:	不行, 不行.	No, it is impossible.
6.	A:	他在你們家坐了多少時候?	How long did he stay at your house?
	B:	坐了一會兒他就走了.	He stayed for a while and left.
	A:	後來他太太來找他了麼?	Did his wife come to look for him later?
	B:	來了. 他太太也坐了不大的工夫就走了.	Yes, she did. His wife also didn't stay very long and left.
	A:	他太太說甚麼?	What did his wife say?
	B:	說他已經出來了很多的時候了.	She said that he had been away for a very long time.
	A:	他太太生chì了麼?	Was his wife angry?
	B:	生了半天的chì了.	She had been angry for a long time.

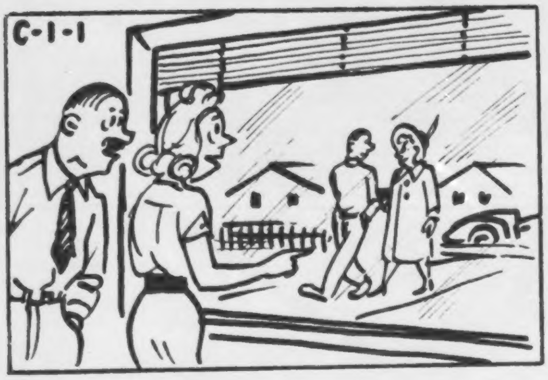
7.	A:	你寫的字我看不見,寫大點兒行不行?	I can't see the characters you wrote. Would it be all right for you to write larger?
	B:	可以.可是你站近點兒就看見了	Yes, I can. But you would be able to see them if you stood closer.
	A:	你說甚麼?我没聽見,你走近一點兒,好麼?	What did you say? I didn't hear you. Come closer, will you?
	B:	好,我走近點兒.你站近一點兒,我說的話你就聽見了.	O.K. I'll come closer. If you stand closer, then you will be able to hear what I say.
	A:	為甚麼我覺*得中國字這麼難寫?	Why is it that Chinese characters are so difficult for me to write?
	B:	你多寫就覺得容易了.	If you write more, you will find them easy.
8.	A:	你開車得慢點兒開.	You must drive slowly.
	B:	為甚麼?	Why?
	A:	前頭有 jǐngchá.	There is a policeman in front of us.

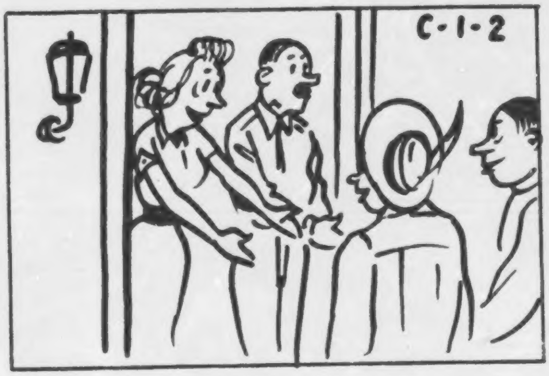
*覺 here is pronounced as jywé.

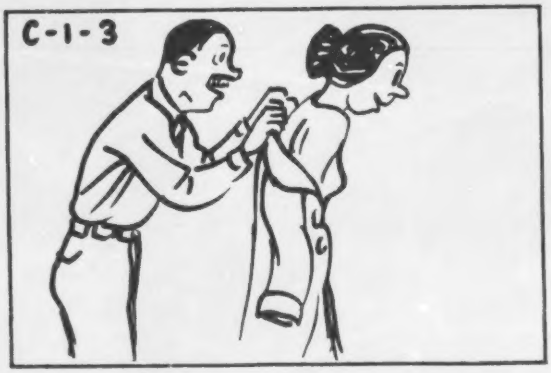
B:	你怎麼知道那兒有 jǐngchá?	How do you know there is a policeman there?
A:	每天他都在那兒。	He is there everyday.
B:	明天我們晚點兒回家, 好麼?	How about our coming home a little later tomorrow?
A:	我 kǔngpà 就是晚一點兒 jǐngchá hái 在那兒.	I am afraid that the police will still be there even if we come home a little later.

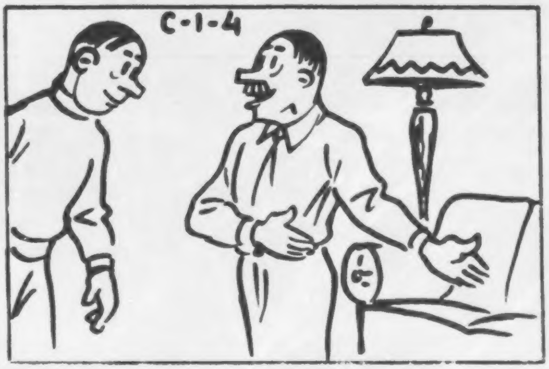
L.49

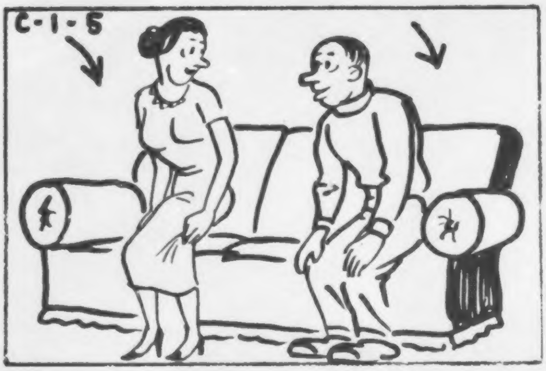


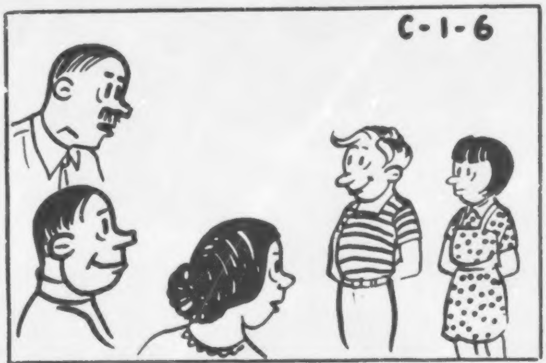


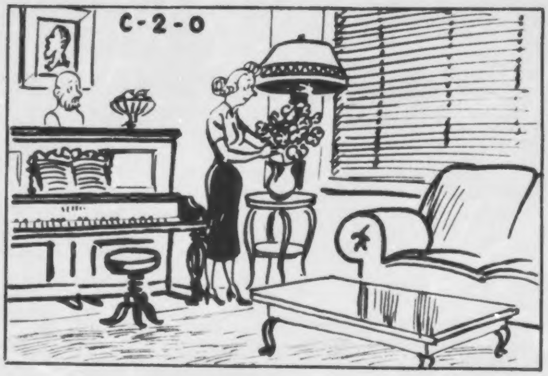


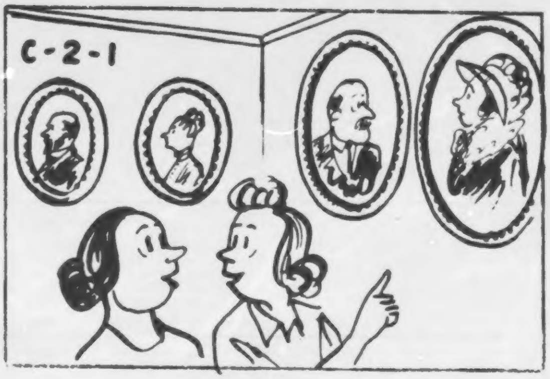


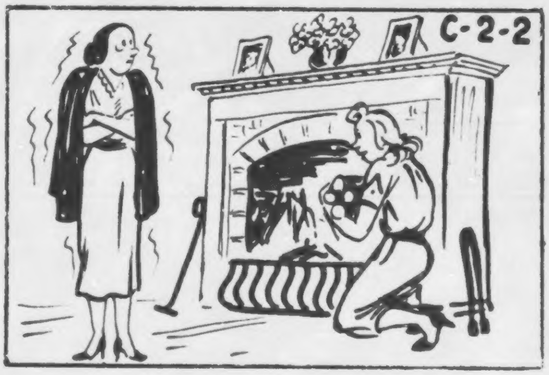


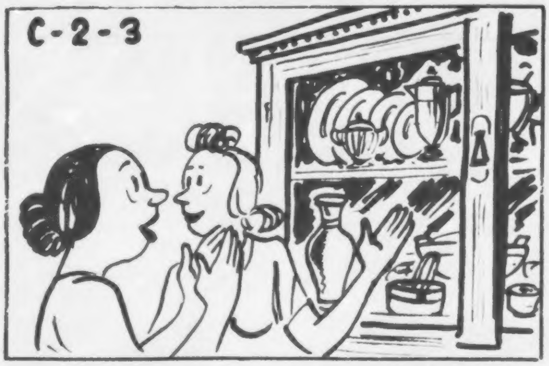


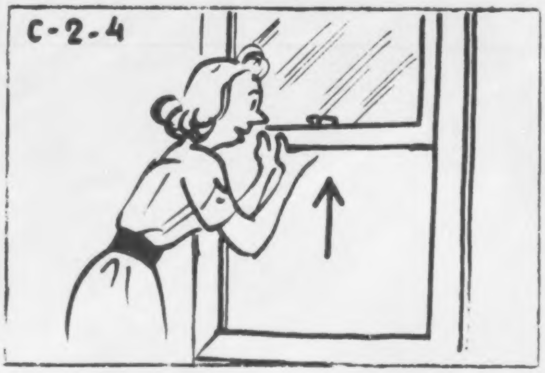


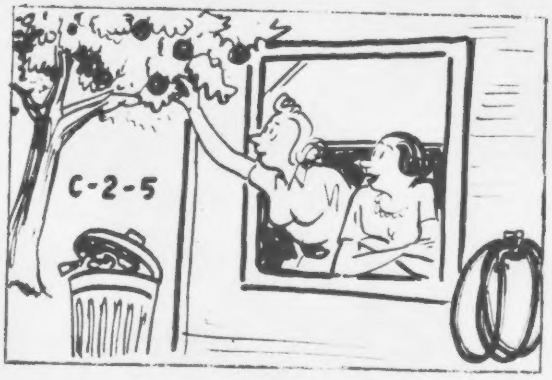

C-2-0

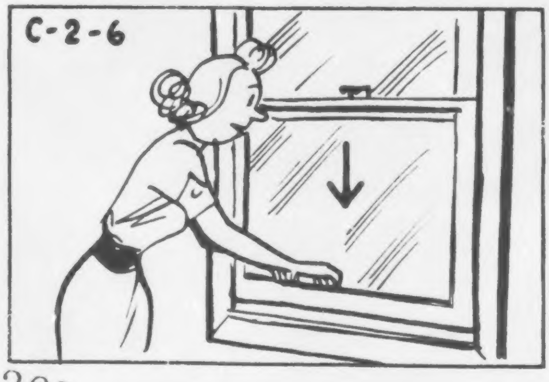

C-2-1


C-2-2


C-2-3


C-2-4


C-2-5


C-2-6

II. Basic Dialogue

Lyóu先生跟Lyóu太太是Hwáng美生跟Hwáng太太的好朋友. 有一個Lǐbài六, Lyóu先生Lyóu太太到Hwáng家來看他們. Hwáng太太看見有chì車來了, 就對Hwáng美生說:

Hwáng太太:	美生, 美生, 你快點兒來看看. 我們房子前頭的chì車是不是Lyóu先生的?	Měishēng, Měishēng, hurry and look. Is the car in front of our house Mr. Lyóu's?
美生:	是他的. 我一看就知道是他的. 他買chì車的時候, 我跟他一塊兒去的.	It is his. I know it as soon as I see it. I went with him when he bought the car.
Hwáng太太:	我們快點兒把門開開, 好ràng他們進來.	Let us open the door quickly in order to let them in.
	(Hwáng先生跟Hwáng太太看見了Lyóu先生跟Lyóu太太.)	(Mr. and Mrs. Hwáng see Mr. and Mrs. Lyóu.)
Hwáng太太:	你們都好a?	How are you both?

Lyóu太太:	都好. 你們呢?	We are both fine. How are you?
美生:	也都很好. 你們來的時候路上的chi車很多ba.	We are also very well. The traffic must have been very heavy when you were on your way here.
Lyóu先生:	真不少. 今天是Lǐbài六, 到這兒來玩兒的, 我看, 有幾千人. 路上的車一lyàng跟着一lyàng, 多極了.	Quite heavy. Today is Saturday. I think there must be thousands of people coming here. There were so many cars, one after the other.
美生:	Lyóu太太, 請nín把大衣twō了, 我tì nín gwà起來.	Mrs. Lyóu, would you like to remove your coat? I will hang it up for you.
Lyóu太太:	好. Syèsye nín.	Surely. Thank you.
Hwáng太太:	請你們三位在這兒tán一會兒. 我去把我們的孩子找來, 因為他們很想見見Lyóu先生跟Lyóu太太.	Will the three of you talk here. I will go to get our children because they would like very much to meet Mr. and Mrs. Lyóu.
美生:	老Lyóu, 請坐, 請坐.	Have a seat, Old Lyóu.

L. 49

Lyóu 先生：	(對Lyóu 太太 說：) 你看，他們的 新 shāfā 真 好看. 我 ji 的 他們的 舊 shāfā 是 húng 的，現在 這個 是 lán 的.	(Talking to Mrs. Lyóu) Look! Their new sofa is really beautiful. I remember their old one was red, and now this one is blue.
美生：	Lyóu 先生，Lyóu 太太 chà 不多 有 兩三年 沒看見 我們的 孩子 了 ba? 他們 都 大 點兒 了.	Mr. and Mrs. Lyóu, you haven't seen our children for two or three years, have you? They all have grown a little.
Lyóu 先生：	有 三年多 了. 在 你們 bān 家 以前，我們 看見 nín 兒子 的 時候，他 還 不會 pǎu 呢.	It's been more than three years. When we saw your son before you moved, he didn't even know how to run.
Lyóu 太太：	Nín 兒子的 yǎnjing 跟 bi 子 都 syàng nín.	Your son looks like you both in the nose and eyes.

Lyóu 先生:	可是 nín 女兒的 dzwěi 跟 ěrdwo 都有點兒 syàng Hwáng 太太.	But your girl resembles Mrs. Hwáng in the mouth and ears.
Lyóu 太太:	他們都上學了麼?	Are both going to school?
美生:	大的上學了, 小的還沒呢。	The big one goes to school, but the small one hasn't started yet.
Hwáng 太太:	(對 Lyóu 太太說:) 我想請 nín 看看我們的房子. 先看看我們的 kètīng, 好麼?	(Talking to Mrs. Lyóu) I like to show you our house. How about looking at the sitting room first?
Lyóu 太太:	好極了. 你們新買了這個 gāngchín 是因為 nín 女兒已經學 gāngchín 了麼?	That is fine indeed. Is it because your daughter is already taking piano lessons that you recently bought this piano?
Hwáng 太太:	對了. 他很喜歡 gāngchín, 所以我們就給他買了一個. 他已經學了二十多 kè 了.	Yes, that is right. She likes the piano very much. So we bought one for her. She has had over twenty lessons.

Lyóu	太太: 這幾張 syàngpyān兒, 都是誰?	Whose pictures are these?
Hwáng	太太: 那兩張是美生的 dzǔ 父跟 dzǔ 母. 這兩張是他 dzǔ 父的父親跟母親.	Those two are Mĕishēng's grandparents. These two are the parents of his grandfather.
Lyóu	太太: 美生很 syàng他的 dzǔ 父, 不太 syàng dzǔ 母.	Mĕishēng resembles his grandfather very much, but he doesn't look like his grandmother very much.
Hwáng	太太: Nín 覺得 lěng 麼? 我再多 shāu 點兒 mù 頭.	Do you feel cold? I will burn a little more wood.
Lyóu	太太: 别 shāu 了. 我想我 chwān 上大衣, 一會兒就好了.	Don't put in any more wood. I will be all right after I put on my coat.
Hwáng	太太: 請 nín 看看我們的 pán子, wǎn. 本來我放在 chú 房裏頭的. 後來我們 bān來以後, 我覺得放在 kètīng 裏頭	Look at our chinaware please. Formerly I had them in the kitchen. After we moved here, I thought it was better to put them in

	好一點兒	the sitting room.
Lyóu	太太: 你們的 pán子, wǎn,真不少. 那 yàng的 húng wǎn,我知道是中國作的,很有名.	You have a large collection of chinaware. That kind of bowl is very famous, and I know they are made in China.
Hwáng	太太: 請 nín 看看我們的 ywàn子, 等我把 chwānghu 開開, 我們從 chwānghu 往外看看.	Take a look at our yard. Let me open the window and we can look out through the window.
Lyóu	太太: 你們的 ywàn子真大. Tsǎu 跟 shù 都很好. 還有 pínggwo. 我可以吃一個麼?	It is really large. There are nice trees and grass. And there are also apples. May I eat one?
Hwáng	太太: 别 kèchi. 多吃幾個. 等我把 chwānghu 關上, 我們到 lóu 上去看看.	Help yourself. Eat a few more. Let me close the window, and we can go to see the upstairs.
Lyóu	太太: 好. Nín 在前頭走,	Fine. You lead the

我在 後頭 跟着 ba.	way. I will follow you.

Vocabulary

146.	bídz	鼻子	N:	nose
147.	dzǔfù	祖父	N:	grandfather (paternal)
148.	dzǔmǔ	祖母	N:	grandmother (paternal)
148.1	dzǔfùmǔ	祖父母	N:	grandparents (paternal)
149.	dzwěi	嘴	N:	mouth
150.	ěrdwo	耳朵	N:	ear
151.	gāngchín	鋼琴	N:	piano
152.	gwà	掛	V:	hang
153.	hǎu	好	A:	so that, in order to
154.	mùtou	木頭	N:	wood
155.	pándz	盤子	N:	plates, dishes
156.	pínggwo	蘋果	N:	apple
157.	shāfā	沙發	N:	sofa
158.	shāu	燒	V:	burn, heat
158.1	shāu shwěi	燒水	VO:	boil water
158.2	shāu fàn	燒飯	VO:	cook rice
159.	syàngpyār	像片兒	N:	photograph, snapshot
160.	tsǎu	草	N:	grass
161.	yǎnjing	眼睛	N:	eye
162.	ywàndz	院子	N:	courtyard

III. Grammar Analysis

1. Time expressions

There are two kinds of time expressions: time-when group and time-spent group.

1.1 Time-when group. They are movable adverbs and can be sub-divided into three groups:

1.11 Time-when words, either individual words or a combination of time words:

jīntyān	today
jīntyān dzǎushang	this morning
míngtyān wǎnshang	tomorrow evening

1.12 Time phrases or clauses ending with yǐchyán, yǐhòu, de shŕhou, etc:

chr̄fàn yǐchyán	before eating
syàbān yǐhòu	after office hours
shàngkède shŕhou	during class
Wǒmen hwéijyā yǐchyán,	Before we go home, ...
Tā láile yǐhòu,	After he came,.....
Wǒ dzai Jūnggwo de shŕhou,	When I was in China, ...

1.13 Specified and/or numbered nouns:

nèi tyān	that day
jèi lyǎngge lǐbài	these two weeks
měi yíge ywè	every month

1.2 Time-spent group. They usually follow the main verb and precede the object.

1.21 Time-spent words.

búdàde gūngfu	a short time
hěn dàde gūngfu	a very long time
bàntyān	half a day, a long time
yìhwěr	a moment

1.22 Numbered nouns

sānge jūngtóu	three hours
yì syǎushŕ	one hour
wǔ-lyòuge ywè	five or six months

Translate the following:

1) I think he will be back tomorrow afternoon.
2) Tomorrow is Saturday. We don't go to the office.
3) Before supper he reads the newspaper, and everyday after supper he studies.
4) When he comes here, he can stay at my house and he doesn't have to go to a hotel.
5) Every two months I go to San Francisco to buy some Chinese food.
6) Three days ago, I didn't know whether he would come or not.
7) We talked for a long time and I forgot to go home for supper.
8) He was sick for almost two months and is much thinner than before.

2. Yìdyǎr used after an adverb:

Yìdyǎr or dyǎr may be used after an adverb to mean "a little". It is often used in sentences expressing polite suggestion.

Chǐng nǐ syě dà yìdyǎr.	Please write a little larger.
Nǐ jàn ywǎn yìdyǎr.	Stand away a little.
Kwài yìdyǎr dzǒu ba!	Let us walk a little faster.
Chǐng nín lái dzǎu yìdyǎr.	Please come a little earlier.

Translate the following:

1) May we eat a little later today?
2) When you write, write a little slower.
3) Can you write a little clearer?
4) Please speak a little more slowly.

IV. Pattern Drill

Pattern 1

Time Expression

A. Time-when

Examples:

1) 今天你們到那兒去了?	Where did you go today?
2) 今天早上他沒吃早飯就到城裏頭去了.	He didn't have any breakfast this morning when he went to town.
3) 吃飯的時候不要說話.	Don't talk when (you are) eating.
4) 他到法國去以前要先學法國話.	Before he goes to France he wants to learn French.
5) 他來的那天我們都不在家.	We were all away from home that day he came.
6) 每一個 lǐbài 他畫一張畫兒.	He paints a picture each week.

Exercise:

a. Render the following into English orally:

1) Tāmen nyánnyán dàu Fàgwo chyù yítsz̀.

2) Míngtyan nǐ dàu Wángjya chyù ma?

3) Wǒmen lǐbaityān dàu gūngywán chyù, hǎu ma?

4) Wǒmen sywésyàude sywésheng tyāntyān dzǎushang bādyan jūng shàngkè, syàwǔ sz̀dyan jūng hwéi jyā.

5) Shànglǐbaityān wǒ méikànjyan tā.

6) Jīntyan dzǎushang nǐ méikāichē ma?

7) Jīnnyan chíywe sz̀hau shr̀ lǐbaijǐ?

8) Wǒ syīwang tāmen hòutyan néng lái.

b. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) We have been studying Chinese for two months already.

2) How long are you going to be here?

3) I was in England for two weeks with my sister's family last year.

4) They said that when they were in China, they ate Chinese food every day.

5) He has been gone for three months already.

6) I will be back in a minute.

7) She has been shopping for two and a half hours, but still hasn't finished.

8) When I use chopsticks to eat, it takes me a full hour to finish my meal.

c. Answer the following questions orally:

1) Nĭ shémma shŕhou dàu sywésyàu chyù?

2) Mĕityan gūngywán jĭdyan jūng kāi mén?

3) Yínháng lĭbailyŏu kāi mén ma? Yĭngyè ma?

4) Nĭ jīntyan dzăushang méigwā húdz ma?

5) Dzwótyan nĭ măile shūdz, yáshwā le ma?

6) Jèige jwōdz hái hĕn dzāng. Nĭ shémma shŕhou tsāde?

7) Dzwótyan wănshang tā bă wŏde máujīn syĭle ma?

8) Chr̄fàn yĭchyán nĭ syĭshŏu ma?

9) Nĭ dzài R̀bĕn de shŕhou méisywé R̀bĕnhwà ma?

10) Tāmen dzŏule yĭhŏu, nĭmen méichūchyu ma?

11) Nĭ dzài Bĕipíng de shŕhou dzĕmma wárde?

12) Shànglibaisān wŏ dàu nĭ jyā chyù, nĭ chūchyule. Nèityan nĭ shémma shŕhou hwéilaide?

L.49

B. Time-spent

Examples:

1)	他們去了多大的工夫了？	How long have they been gone?
2)	他們走了半天了.	They've been gone for a long time.
3)	我們到了這個地方已經五個多月了.	We have been here for more than five months already.
4)	這個學校的學生每天念九個鐘頭的書.	The students at this school study for nine hours each day.
5)	他在lóu上五六個鐘頭了,還沒下來.	He has been upstairs for five to six hours already and still hasn't come down(stairs).

Exercise:

a. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) How many hours do you study every day?

2) It takes only six hours to travel by plane from New York to San Francisco.

3) They have known each other for twenty years.

4) I have studied Chinese for six months. Now I can read five hundred characters and can write about three hundred.

5) How long does it take you to brush your teeth and wash your face?

6) They have been talking outside the house for half an hour already. Tell them to come in.

7) I have not seen him for many days.

8) He will be back in half an hour. Please sit in the living room and wait.

b. Render the following into English orally:

1) Tā fùchin dzài Měigwo jùle sānge ywè jyou hwéi Jūnggwo chyùle.

2) Wǒmen tánle bàntyān le.

3) Wǒmende chwán dzǒule èrshrjǐtyan tsái dàu Měigwo.

4) Gūngbīng dā fúchyáu dāde jēn kwài. Jyòu yùngle sānge jūngtóu.

5) Jèishwang twōsyé yǐjing chwānle lyǎngnyán le. Nǐ kàn hái méihwài.

6) Tā měityan tsā syé děi tsā èrshrfēn jūng.

7) Nǐ chí dz̀syíngchē dàu chéng lǐtou chyù yàu yùng dwōshau shŕhou?

8) Wǒmen chr̄le sāntyande R̀běn fàn le. Jīntyan chr̄ Měigwo fàn, hǎu ba.

c. Answer the following questions orally:

1) Tsúng Měigwo dzwò chwán dàu Yīnggwo yàu dzǒu jǐtyān?

2) Nǐmen měityan shàng jǐge jūngtóude kè?

3) Nǐ dzài lùjyūn dwōshau shŕhou le?

4) Tsúng jyāli kāichē dàu sywésyàu shŕfen jūng gòu ma?

5) Dzwótyan wǎnshang nǐ nyànle sānge jūngtóude shū ma?

6) Jèige dūngsyi nǐ mǎile dwōshau shŕhou le?

7) Nèige yínháng dzài jèr yǒu èrshrwǔ nyán ma?

8) Syàkè yǐhòu syōusyi jǐfen jūng?

Pattern 2

一點兒 after adverbs

快一點兒跑! Run a little faster!

Examples:

1) 慢一點兒走.	Walk a little slower!
2) 快一點兒 tíng 車.	Stop the car quickly. (or immediately)

Exercise:

Render the following into English orally:

1) Wǒmen jīnnyan dzǎu yìdyǎr mǎi shū ba.

2) Nǐ shwōhwà tài kwài, wǒ budǔng. Chǐng màn yìdyǎr shwō, hǎu ma?

3) Nǐmen míngtyan dzǎushang dōu dzǎu yìdyǎr lái. Wǎnshang kéyi dzǎu yìdyar dzǒu.

4) Chǐng nǐ kwài yìdyǎr bǎ chē kāidzǒu.

5) Jàusyàngjī dzài nǎr? Wǒmen kwài yìdyǎr jàusyàng ba.

6) Dzǎu yìdyǎr gàusung wǒmen.

7) Wǒmen dōu děng nǐ ne. Kwài yìdyǎr lái ba.

8) Wǒmende shŕhou hěn dwō, nǐ kéyi màn yìdyǎr chr̄.

Homework

Dzwótyan Wáng Héde mèimei lǎile. Tā shwō tā gēge gěi tā mǎile yíge syīn gāngchín. Tā gāusyìngjíle. Tā yàu chǐng wǒmen dàu jyā chyù kàn gāngchín. Kěshr dzwótyan wǒmen dōu hěn máng, méi gūngfu chyù. Tā shwō nǐmen míngtyan lái ba. Swóyi wǒmen jīntyan dōu dàu tā jyā chyùle.

Wáng Hé yǒu lyǎngge mèimei. Tāmen hěn syàng. Wǒmen dàu tā jyāde shŕhou, lyǎngge rén dōu jàndzai ywàndzli. Wǒ kànbuchulái shr̀ něiyíge mèimei dzwótyan dàu wǒmen jyā láide. Wǒ shwō shr̀ gāu yìdyǎrde nèige. Wǒ tàitai shwō shr̀ ǎi yìdyǎrde nèige. Hòulai, háishr wǒ dwèile. Kànle gāngchín, wǒmen dzài Wángjya dzwòle yìhwěr jyou hwéijyāle.

Answer the following questions:

1) Shéi mǎile yíge gāngchín?
2) Gāngchín shr̀ shéide?
3) Wèishémma wǒmen dzwótyan bunéng dàu Wángjya chyù?
4) Wáng Syáujye chǐng wǒmen dàu tā jyā chyù dzwò shémma?
5) Wǒmen chyùle ma? Shémma shŕhou chyùde?
6) Wángjya yǒu jǐge nyǔháidz?
7) Wáng Hé syǐhwan tāde mèimei ma?
8) Chǐng wǒmen dàu Wángjya chyùde shr̀ gāu yìdyǎrde syáujye háishr ǎi yìdyǎrde syáujye?

V. READING

A. Characters (Nos.264-271)

264.	禮 礼	lǐ	BF:禮拜(week, [worship])	禮拜天 - Sunday
265.	拜	bài	BF:禮拜(week, [worship])	三個禮拜 - three weeks
266.	才 纔	tsái	A: just,merely; then and only then, not until	gāng 才 - just a moment ago 才五點鐘 -only five o'clock
267.	許	syǔ	BF: perhaps [V: permit]	也許 - maybe
268.	穿	chwān	V: wear (clothes)	穿衣shang -wear clothes, put on clothes 穿不上 - unable to put on (clothes)
269.	黑	hēi	SV: be black; dark	黑衣shang-black clothes 天黑了 - the day has darkened

				黑bǎn- blackboard
270.	白	bái	SV: be white; fair	白天 - daytime 明白 - understand 白紙- white paper
271.	吧 罷	ba	P: (sentence suffix, implying probability or indicating a request)	是這個吧?- it must be this, isn't it? 現在吃吧 - let's eat now

1. 明天，禮拜天，你穿甚麼衣shang 出門？
2. 我想穿白的，也許穿黑的．你說那件衣shang 好？
3. 我覺得黑的好一點兒．
4. 甚麼時候出去？
5. 吃了晚飯才走呢．
6. 我想買兩個 jwō 子．
7. 有一個鋪子，一張 jwō 子才賣兩塊半．
8. 你聽了別笑他，他在大街上的一個酒館兒喝了很多酒，後來要到書鋪去買魚．
9. 往舊 jīn 山開的車，一天有好幾次．一個人才幾塊錢．
10. 上禮拜我問了他的歲數，聽說他哭了一夜．
11. 中國那條河長，那條河短，他都忘了．
12. 當 bān 長也很難，每天辦好些事情．

13. 對不起，這個樣子的 syé 帶子，已經賣完了．

14. 八九月他住在北邊兒，一二月住在南邊兒．

C. Story

有一個禮拜六，張太太請了一位小 jye，一位太太在他們家吃飯．

吃飯的時候，張太太請那位小 jye 坐在張大明的 dzwǒ 邊兒，請那位太太坐在張大明 yòu 邊兒．

他們都坐好了．張太太到 chú 房裏頭去拿菜的時候，swéirán 聽見張大明跟那兩位 kè 人說了幾句話，可是沒聽 chīngchu．

等張太太把菜拿出來的時候，那兩位 kè 人已經走了．張太太問他先生：「他們怎麼還沒吃就走了？你一定又說錯了話

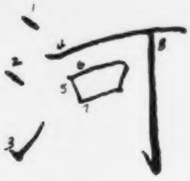
了.」張大明說:「我也不知道他們為甚麼走的. 我想他們也許都不 è 吧. 我跟他們才說了一兩句話.」

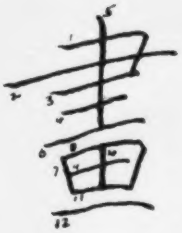
張太太說:「你跟他們說甚麼了?」張大明說:「我問我 dzwǒ 邊兒的那個女人, 他有先生了麼? 他說還沒有呢. 我又問他有幾個孩子? 他沒說甚麼就走了.」

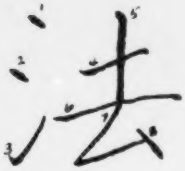
「你 yòu 邊兒的那位為甚麼也走了呢?」張大明說:「誰知道呢? 我問他有小孩子了麼? 他說已經有三個了. 我又問他有先生了麼? 他也沒說甚麼就走了.」

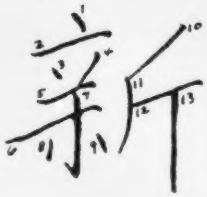
VI. WRITING

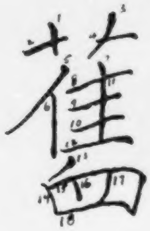
A. Writing (Characters 171-175)











B. Radicals

1. 氵 (water, 85) as in: 河, 法
2. 田 (field, 102) as in: 畫
3. 斤 (axe, 69) as in: 新
4. 臼 (a mortar, 134) as in: 舊

LESSON 50

I. Structural Dialogue

1.	A:	你們 三個人 看見 我的 yān 了 沒有？	Did the three of you see my cigarettes?
	B:	沒看見.	No, we didn't.
	A:	我 想 不是 你 拿了, 就是 他 拿了; 要不rán 就是 老 Syè 拿了.	I think either you took them, or he did, otherwise Old Syè did.
	B:	我們 誰 都 沒拿. 我 想 要不是 你 chōu 了 就是 你 沒買; 要不 rán 就是你 放在 别的 地方 了.	None of us took them. I think either you smoked them, or you didn't buy any, otherwise you put them in some other place.
	A:	我 jì 的chīngchingchuchū, 我 還 有 很 多 yān 呢.	I remember clearly that I still have very many cigarettes.
	B:	你 太太 chōu yān 不 chōu?	Does your wife smoke?
	A:	他 不 chōu, 他 也 不願意 我 chōu.	She doesn't smoke and she doesn't like me to smoke either.

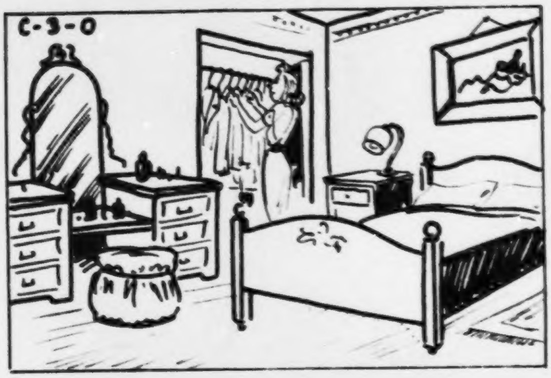
	B:	我想不是你太太把你的yān拿去了,就是rēng了;要不rán就是把yān shāu了.	I think if your wife did not take them, then she must have thrown them away, otherwise she must have burned them.
	A:	可是我太太這幾天都没在家.	But my wife hasn't been home these few days.
	B:	你找了没有?	Did you look for them?
	A:	我找了半天了.	I have looked for them for a long time.
	B:	我想不是在你大衣的kǒudài兒裏頭,就是在上衣的kǒudài兒裏頭;要不rán就是在chènshān的kǒudài兒裏頭.	I think if they aren't in your overcoat pocket, then they are in your jacket pocket, otherwise in your shirt pocket.
	A:	好,我去找一找.	O.K. I'll go and look for them.
2.	A:	你想我早上起來以後先作甚麼?	What do you think I do first after I get up?
	B:	不是shwāyá,就是gwā húdz,要不rán就是syǐdzǎu.	If you don't brush your teeth, then you shave, otherwise you take a bath.

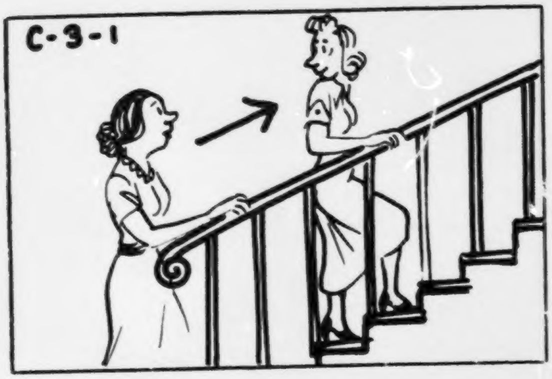
A:	不對.我先穿yīshang.你想我穿完了yīshang就作甚麼?	No, I put on my clothes first. What do you think I do after putting on my clothes?
B:	不是shū頭,就是syĭlyǎn,要不rán就是gwā hú子.	If you don't comb your hair, then you wash your face, otherwise you shave.
A:	也不對.我得往chwānghu外頭看看有太yang没有.你想我還要作甚麼?	Wrong again. I have to look out through the window to see if the sun is up. What do you think I do next?
B:	你不是看報,就是吃早飯;要不rán就是喝kāfēi.	If you don't read the newspapers, then you have breakfast, otherwise you have coffee.
A:	又不對! 我得去syĭlyǎn. Syĭ完了lyǎn,我要作甚麼,你知道麼?	Wrong again! I have to wash my face. Do you know what I do after washing my face?

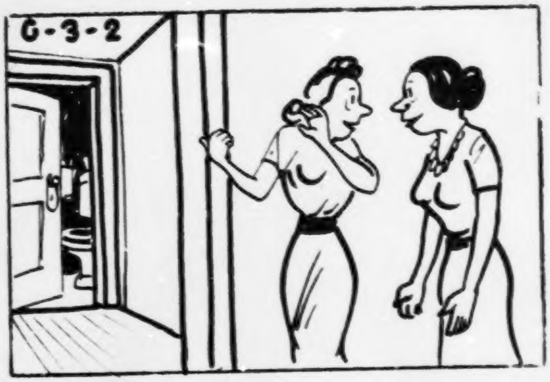
	B:	不是 gwā hú子,就是 到外頭 走一走;要不 rán 就是去作 早飯.	If you don't shave, then you take a walk outside, otherwise you prepare breakfast.
	A:	不對.當rán 我得 把大衣 穿好.穿完了大衣 作甚麼?	No, I certainly have to put on my coat. What do I do after putting on my coat?
	B:	我不知道. 你去問 別人吧!	I don't know. Go ask somebody else!
3.	A:	你到那個 飯館兒 去的時候,有人 跟 你說話 麼?	Were there people talking to you when you went into that restaurant?
	B:	沒有. 他們 吃飯的 吃飯,喝tāng 的 喝 tāng.	No. Some were eating and some were drinking soup.
	A:	都吃中國 飯麼?	Were they all eating Chinese food?
	B:	不都 吃中國飯.吃中國飯的 吃中國飯,吃美國飯的 吃美國飯.	Not all of them were eating Chinese food. Some were eating Chinese food, and some were eating American food.

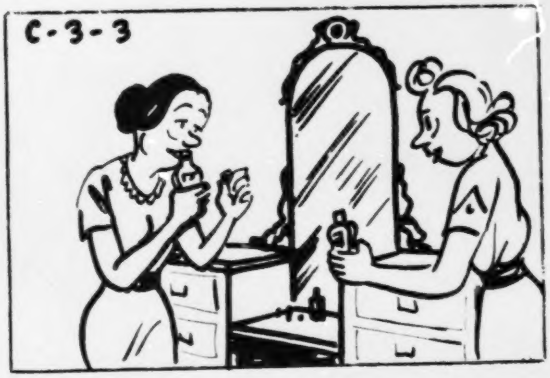
A:	吃飯的都用kwài子麼?	Did all the people that were eating use chopsticks?
B:	用dāu子chā子的用dāu子chā子,用kwài子的用kwài子.	Some were using knives and forks and some were using chopsticks.
A:	喝酒的那個屋子,你進去了麼?	Did you go into the cocktail lounge?
B:	也進去了.他們都沒跟我說話.喝酒的喝酒,唱歌兒的唱歌兒.	Yes, I went in. None of the people talked to me. Some were drinking and some were singing.
A:	喝酒的那個屋子裡的人都唱美國歌兒麼?	Were all the people in the cocktail lounge singing American songs?
B:	唱法國歌兒的唱法國歌兒,唱美國歌兒的唱美國歌兒.	Some were singing French songs and some were singing American songs.

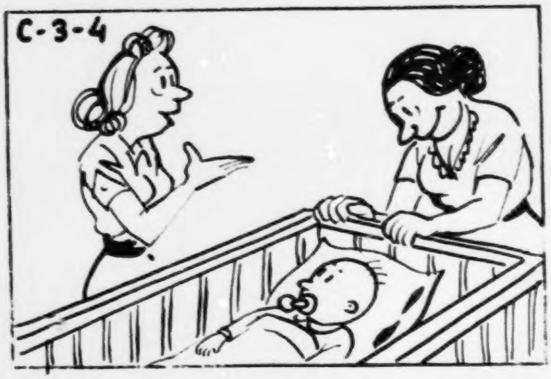
L. 50

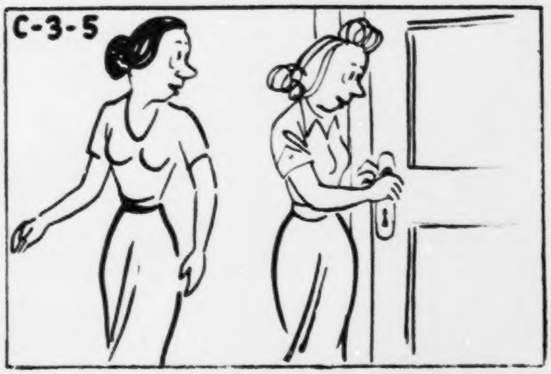


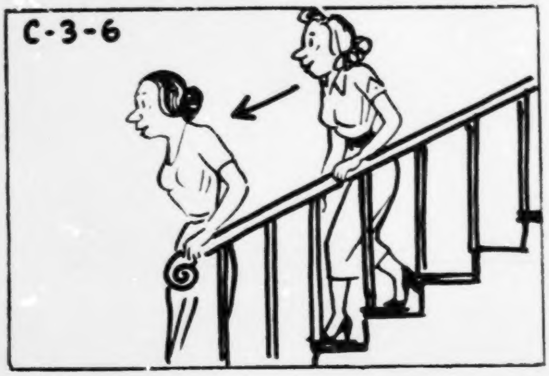




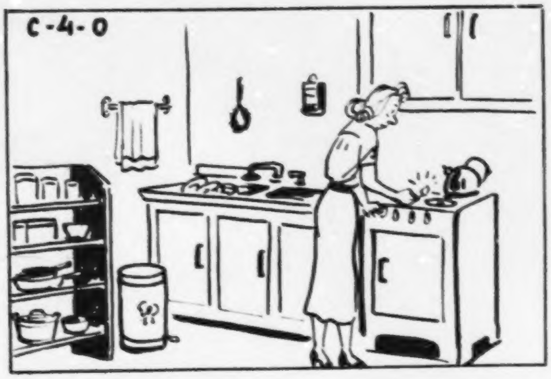




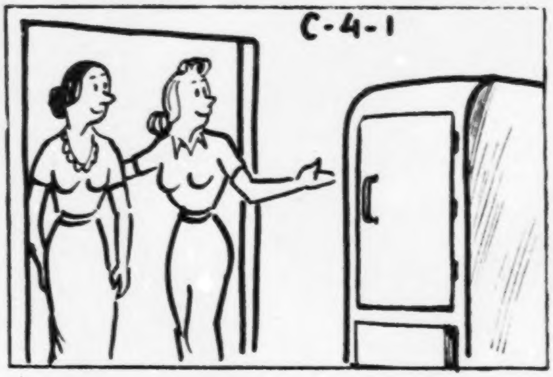




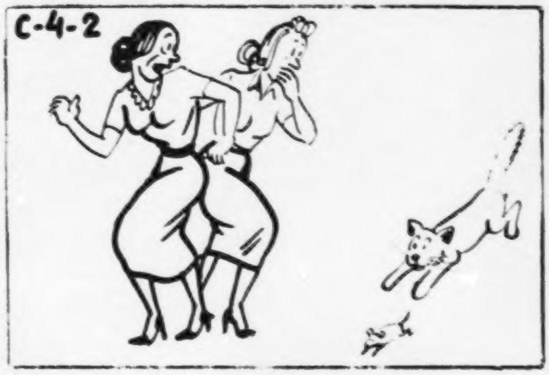
C-4-0



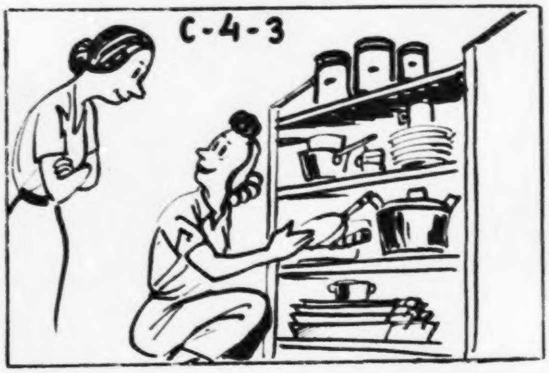
C-4-1



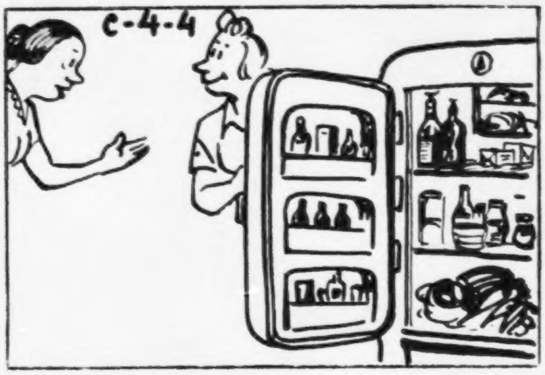
C-4-2



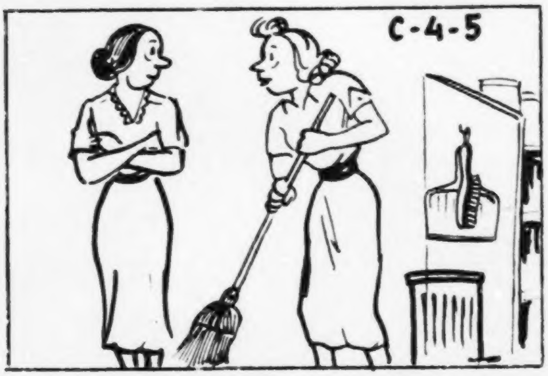
C-4-3



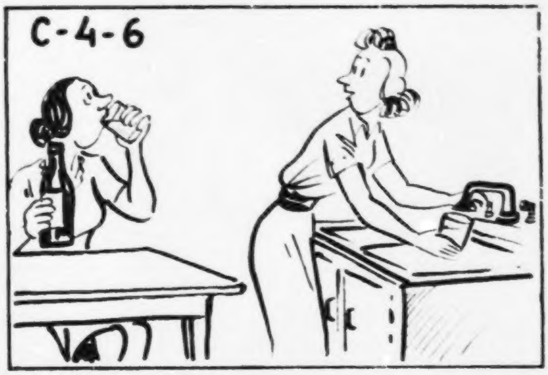
C-4-4



C-4-5



C-4-6



II. Basic Dialogue

Hwáng太太 帶着 Lyóu太太 到 lóu 上 看看 他們的 wò 房.

Hwáng太太:	Lóu上 有 三個 wò 房: 一個 是 我們 自己 住的,還有 兩個 都是給 孩子 住的.	There are three bedrooms upstairs. We are living in one, and the other two are for the children.
Lyóu 太太:	Nín的 lóu上 有 幾個 syǐdzǎu 房?	How many bathrooms are there upstairs?
Hwáng太太:	有兩個. Nín 看,這 就是 我們的 syǐdzau房, 裏頭 有 syǐdzǎu的 dzǎubén,也 有 pēn 子.	There are two. Look, this is our bathroom which has a bath tub and a shower.
Lyóu 太太:	先 看看 nín的 wò房 吧.	Let us see your bedroom first.
Hwáng太太:	Nín看 這是 我們的 chwáng. 那 是 我們的 衣chú. 衣chú 很 大.	Look, this is our bed. That is our closet. It is very big.
Lyóu 太太:	Nín的 shūjwāngtái 真好. 有 很多 hwàjwāngpǐn.	Your dresser is very good. There are very many cosmetics.
Hwáng太太:	我 這些 hwàjwāngpǐn 都是 從 法國 帶來的. 我	All my cosmetics here are brought back from France. I

	不太 喜歡 美國的.	don't like American cosmetics too much.
Lyóu 太太:	我 也 喜歡 法國的.	I like French cosmetics too.
Hwáng 太太:	美國的hwàjwāngpǐn 不是 太 貴, 就是 不太 好.	American cosmetics are either too expensive or not very good.
Lyóu 太太:	Nín的 syāng 水 是 從 法國 帶來的 麼 ?	Is your perfume brought back from France?
Hwáng 太太:	是的. 請 nín wénwen這個 法國 syāng 水.	Yes. Please smell this French perfume.
Lyóu 太太:	真 好 wén.	It really smells good.
Hwáng 太太:	請nín 看看 我們 最 小的 兒子.	Please take a look at our youngest son.
Lyóu 太太:	幾個 月 了? 真 好看 ! 你們 有 三個 孩子, 一定 很 有意思	How many months old? Very cute! You have three children. It certainly must be very interesting.
Hwáng 太太:	孩子的 事情 太 多了, 白天 一會兒 也 不能 syōusyi. 到了 晚上, 他們 睡覺的 睡覺, 看書的 看書, 我	There is too much work because of the children. In the daytime I can't rest even for one moment. When evening comes, some of them go to bed, some read.

	才能 syōusyisyōusyi.	Then I can take a rest.
Lyóu	太太: Nín小兒子真 hwópwo,大兒子愛念書,女兒愛學 gāngchín,我真 syànmu 你們.	That youngest boy of yours is very active, your elder son likes to read, and your daughter likes to take piano lessons. I really envy you.
Hwáng	太太:我請 nín 到 lóu 下看看我們的 chú 房,好麼?	May I ask you to go downstairs to take a look at our kitchen?
Lyóu	太太:好極了.	Fine!
Hwáng	太太: 等我把門關上,一塊兒下 lóu.請 nín 在前頭走吧.	Wait till I have closed the door; we will go downstairs together. You go first please.
Lyóu	太太: Syèsye你們 lóu 下又有 chú 房,又有飯 tīng,還有 kètīng,地方真不小!	Thank you. Downstairs you have a kitchen, a dining room, and a sitting room. The place is really large!

Hwáng 太太:	Bǐ 從前住的地方大點兒. 我先給 nín shāu 點兒開水吧.	It is a little larger than the place we lived before. Let me boil some water for you first.
Lyóu 太太:	別 kèchi. Nín 這 bīngsyāng 真好.	Don't bother. This refrigerator of yours is really nice.
	(Hūrán Hwáng 太太看見有一 jr̄ māu jwēi 一個老 shǔ).	(Suddenly Mrs. Hwáng sees a cat chasing a mouse.)
Hwáng 太太:	Nín 看見我們的 māu jwēi 老 shǔ, 沒 syà 了一tyàu 吧?	Weren't you startled by seeing our cat chasing a mouse?
Lyóu 太太:	這個地方老 shǔ tè 別多. 所以家裏頭一定得有一 jr̄ māu.	There is an unusual number of mice here. So there must be a cat in the house.
Hwáng 太太:	這是我們新買的 gwō.	This is a pot we recently bought.
Lyóu 太太:	真好. 我可以看看 nín 的新 bīngsyāng 麼?	It is really good. Can I look at your new refrigerator?
Hwáng 太太:	可以. Nín 看, 我們 bīng-	Yes, you can. Look, we

syāng裏頭 有 nyóunǎi, 有ròu.	have milk and meat in the refrigerator.
Lyóu 太太: 你們 吃的 東西 真多. Nín的 chú 房很 gānjing.	There is a lot of food. Your kitchen is very clean.
Hwáng 太太: 我 天天 sǎu 地. 有的 時候 一天 sǎu 兩次. 請喝 點兒 可kǒu 可lè, 好不好 ?	I sweep the floor every day. Sometimes I sweep twice. How about having a coke?
Lyóu 太太: 好極了! 我 正 想 喝 點兒 可kǒu 可lè 呢.	Wonderful! I was just thinking of having a coke?
Hwáng 太太: Nín 喝完了, 我們 到 外頭 去看看.	When you have finished drinking, we will go outside to look around.
Lyóu 太太: 好. 我 一會兒 就 喝完了.	Fine. I will finish drinking in a moment.
Hwáng 太太: Nín慢慢兒的 喝 吧.	Take your time.

Vocabulary

163.	bīngsyāng	冰箱	N:	ice box, refrigerator
164.	dì	地	N:	ground; floor
165.	gwō	鍋	N:	pots and pans
166.	hūrán	忽然	MA:	suddenly
167.	hwàjwāngpǐn	化裝品	N:	cosmetics
168.	hwópwo	活潑	SV:	be active, energetic, lively (children)
169.	kāishwěi	開水	N:	boiled water
170.	kěkǒu-kělè	可口可樂	N:	coca-cola
171.	kǒudàr	口袋兒	N:	pocket
172.	lǎushǔ or hàudz	老鼠 耗子	N:	rat, mouse
173.	sǎu	掃	V:	sweep
174.	shūjwāngtái	梳裝台	N:	lady's dresser
175.	syàle yítyàu	唬了一跳	IE:	startled
176.	syāngshwěi	香水	N:	perfume
177.	tsèswǒ	厠所	N:	latrine
178.	wén	聞	V:	smell
178.1	hǎuwén	好聞	SV:	be good to smell
179.	yīchú	衣櫥	N:	clothes closet

III. Grammar Analysis

1. If not....,then....,otherwise.....:

A statement giving three alternatives may be connected by these three words: búshr...., jyòushr......,yàuburán jyòushr....

Jèi jǐge jwōdz dōu bùsyíng. Búshr tài gāu, jyòushr tài cháng, yàuburán jyòushr tài gwèi.	None of these tables will do. If they aren't too high, they are too long, otherwise they are too expensive.
Tā shémma yú dōu méimǎi. Búshr bútài hǎu, jyòushr tài syǎu, yàuburán jyòushr tài gwèi.	He didn't buy any fish. If it isn't too good, it is too small, otherwise it is too expensive.
Wáng Syānsheng hái méilái ne. Búshr tāde chìchē hwàile, jyòushr tā bùnéng lái, yàuburán jyòushr tā búrènshr lù.	Mr. Wáng hasn't come yet. If it isn't that his car broke down, then he can't come, otherwise he does not know the way.

Translate the following:

1) There isn't a pair of shoes in the store I want to buy. If they aren't too big, then they are too small, otherwise they are too expensive.

2) I didn't buy a car. If the cars aren't too big, they are too small, otherwise they are too expensive.

3) I don't like to eat fish. If it isn't too expensive, it doesn't smell good, otherwise it isn't tasty.

4) None of these chairs will do. If they aren't too big, they are too small, otherwise they are too high.

5) He doesn't know how to write good letters. If they aren't too long, they are too short, otherwise they are not clear in meaning.

2. Some are doing this and some are doing that:

The Chinese pattern: VOde VO, VOde VO gives the idea that everybody is engaged in some activity or some are doing this and some are doing that.

Wūdzli yŏu hĕn dwō rén. Chōuyānde chōuyān, hējyŏude hējyŏu.	There are very many people in the room. Some are smoking and some are drinking.
Tāmen dōu yŏu chyán. Măi fángdzde măi fángdz, măi chìchēde măi chìchē.	They all have money. Some are buying houses and some are buying cars.
Syānsheng yìdzŏu, sywésheng jyòu búnyànshūle. Shwōhwàde shwōhwà, shwèijyàude shwèijyàu.	As soon as the teacher leaves, the students will not study any more. Some chat and some go to sleep.
Dzăushang chĭlai yĭhòu, wŏmen dōu hĕn máng. Syĭdzăude syĭdzău, dzwò dzăufànde dzwò dzăufàn.	We are all very busy after we get up. Some take bath and some prepare breakfast.

Translate the following:

1) In the evening, children help their mother in the kitchen. Some sweep the floor, some wash the dishes.

2) Daytime there is nobody home. Some go to work and some go to school.

3) All my children have grown up and are working. Some teach and some are engaged in business.

4) There are very many people at the railway station. Some get on the train and some get off the train.

5) There are many people in that store buying things. Some buy shoes, some buy hats and some buy clothing.

6) There are many people in the park. Some are taking a walk and some are taking pictures.

IV. Pattern Drill

Pattern 1

......búshr....,jyòushr......,yàuburán jyòushr......

這句話不是dzǔ父說的,就是dzǔ母說的,要不rán就是父親說的.	These words were spoken by either the grandfather or the grandmother, otherwise by the father.

Examples:

1) 這兩個hwáng的mù頭pán子,不是你買的就是你太太買的,要不rán是那兒來的呢?	These two wooden platters must have been bought either by you or your wife. Otherwise where could they have come from?
2) 你的新gāngchín不是你dzǔ父給你買的,就是你dzǔ母給你買的,要不rán就是你太太的母親給你買的.	Yournew piano must have been bought for you either by your grandfather or your grandmother, otherwise by your mother-in-law (wife's mother).

Exercise:

a. Render the following into English orally:

1) Jèijang syàngpyār búshr nĭ jàude, jyòushr tā jàude, yàuburán jyòushr wŏ jàude.

2) Wŏde pínggwo búshr nĭ chr̄le, jyòushr nĭ dìdi chr̄le, yàuburán jyòushr nĭ mèimei chr̄le.

3) Nèibĕn shū búshr nĭ fàngdzai wŏ chēlide, jyòushr Lău Wáng fàngde, yàuburán jyòushr wŏde sz̆jĭ fàngde.

4) Nĭ shŏu lĭtou búshr yíkwaitáng, jyòushr yìfēn chyán, yàuburán jyòushr yíge kòudz.

5) Dzwótyan wŏmen măide syédàidz búshr dzài nĭde shàngyī kŏudàr lĭtou, jyòushr dzài nĭ dàyī kŏudar lĭtou, yàuburán jyòushr dzài nĭ kùdzde kŏudar lĭtou.

6) Búshr nǐ chí dżsyíngchē, jyòushr tā chí dżsyíngchē, yàuburán nǐmen dōu dzǒuje chyù.

7) Wǒmen hěn dwō shŕhou méidàu gūngywán chyùle. Búshr wǒ méi gūngfu, jyòushr wǒ tàitai méi gūngfu, yàuburán jyòushr tyānchi hěn lěng, wǒmen dōu búywànyi chūchyu.

8) Tā mèimei bùsyǐhwan dzwò dyànchē. Tā shwō dyànchē-shang búshr rén tài dwō, jyòushr tài lěng, yàuburán jyòushr tài màn. Swóyi tā dzwò chūdzū-chìchē.

b. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) He does not like any of these tables. They are either too long, or too short, or else they are too tall.

2) He said his wife does not drive well. If she does not drive too fast, then she drives too slowly, otherwise she is very careless while driving.

3) None of the pots and pans he has are suitable for cooking Chinese food. If they are not too big, then they are too small, otherwise they are too heavy.

4) Mr. Wang was not home when I called on him yesterday morning. He either went to the market, or to his father's store, or else he went to the countryside on his new motorcycle.

5) Every time I saw her she was in the midst of doing something. If she was not sweeping the floor, then she was washing the dishes, otherwise she was reading stories to her children.

6) I could not find a button for this coat. It was either too big or too small, or else the color was not right.

7) There are very few carriages in this country. Either the carriage is too slow, or it breaks down too easily, otherwise, it is very uncomfortable to ride in.

8) He bought something new for his wife every year. If it was not a new car, then it was a sofa, or else a new refrigerator.

L.50

Pattern 2

V.O.de V.O., V.O.de V.O. (Some are doing this, and others are doing that).

那個屋子裏頭的學生念書的念書寫字的寫字. Some of the students in that room are studying, others are writing (characters).

Examples:

1) 他們在chū房裏 shāu水的 shāu水,做飯的做飯,人人都很忙. Some of those in the kitchen are boiling water, others are cooking. Everybody is busy.

2) 下kè以後,學生們喝kāfēi的喝kāfēi,看報的看報,十分鐘一會兒就過去了. After classes some of the students drink coffee, others read the newspaper. The ten minutes pass by very quickly.

Exercise:

a. Render the following into English orally:

1) Chr̄le fàn yǐhou wǒmen syǐwǎnde syǐwǎn, sǎudìde sǎudì, shŕjǐfen jūng wǒmen jyòu bǎ chúfáng shōushr hǎule.

2) Wǒ gāng dzài dzǎufáng lǐtou kànjyan syǐshǒude syǐshǒu, gwāhúdzde gwāhúdz, wǒ tsái syǎngchilai jīntyan shr̀ Lǐbailyòu.

3) Lyǔgwǎn lóusya kètīng lǐtou shémma rén dōu yǒu. Syōusyide syōusyi, chōuyānde chōuyān, shwōhwàde shwōhwà. Wǒ syǎng syě yìfēng syìn dōu buchéng.

4) Wǒ dzwótyan dàu nǐ jyā chyù jǎu nǐ. Nǐde háidz méigàusung nǐ ma? Tāmen dàgài méikànjyan wǒ. Wǒ chyùde shŕhou tāmen dōu dzài ywàndz lǐtou, wárde wár, chr̄ dūngsyide chr̄ dūngsyi.

5) Hàidzmen kànjyan fùchin hwéijyāle. Ná twōsyéde ná twōsyé, ná bàude ná bàu. Fùchin dzwòdzai shāfāshang jēnshr gāusyìngjíle.

6) Tāmen hǎusyàng yàu chūchyude yàngdz. Tsā syéde tsā syé, shwā yīshangde shwā yīshang. Nǐ jr̄dau tāmen yàu dàu nǎr chyù ma?

7) Wǒmen jǐge rén dàule Fàgwo, dìyījyan jyòushr mǎi dūngsyi. Swéirán dōu shr̀ nánren, kěshr dōu yàu mǎi nyǔrén yùngde dūngsyi. Wǒmen dàule pùdz, mǎi syāngshwěide mǎi syǎngshwěi, mǎi hwàjwāngpǐnde mǎi hwàjwāngpǐn, dǎswan hwěigwode shŕhou sùnggei nyǔ péngyou.

8) Yīnwei wǒ jr̄dau tāmen yàulái, swóyi dzwòle hěn dwō kāfēi. Shéi jr̄dau tāmen láile yǐhou hē kěkǒu-kělède hē kěkǒu-kěle, hē cháde hē chá, méiyou rén hē kāfēi.

b. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) The trolley was very crowded. Some people were smoking, others were talking.

2) When the weather is good, I often take my children to the park. Some ride the bicycle, others play on the lawn. We all have a good time.

3) Some were buying fish and others were buying meat at the market. No one looked at anybody else. How could I know that she was behind me?

4) The people eating in that restaurant are both American and Chinese. Some are using knives and forks, others are using chopsticks.

5) I asked them, but they did not answer me. Some were drinking there, others were there singing. No one seemed to have seen me.

6) On that mountain top some rode horses, others walked. They all liked the scenery there.

7) At the railway station, some were waiting for the train, others were getting off the train.

8) Some were counting the money in the store, others were looking at the merchandise, still others were looking for merchandise. Both customers and clerks seemed to be very busy.

Homework

Wǒde nánháidz měityan tsúng sywésyàu yì hwéidàu jyāli jyòu kāi bīngsyāng búshr hē kěkǒukěle jyòushr hē nyóunǎi yàuburán jyòu shr̀ chr̄ pínggwo. Dzwótyan tā hwéilai yǐhou hēle yìdyar kāishwěi, jyòu dzwòdzai shāfāshang kàn bàu. Wǒ jywéde hěn chígwài. Wǒ wèn tā mǔchin. Tā mǔchin shwō yīnwèi chyántyan tā bāng yíge syānsheng bānjyā, jīntyan wǎnshang nèige syānsheng chǐng tā chr̄ jájī. Tā dzwèi syǐhwan chr̄ jájī. Tā shwō tā yàu chr̄ hěn dwō jájī, swóyi syàndzai shémma dōu bùchr̄, děngdàu wǎnshang jyòu chr̄ jájī. Wǒ tīngle jèige hwà tsái míngbai.

Answer the following questions:

1) Wǒ jyāde bīngsyāngli yǒu shémma?

2) Wǒde háidz syǐhwan chr̄ shémma?

3) Wèishémma dzwótyan tā jyòu hēle yìdyar kāishwěi?

4) Tā shēngchìle ma?

5) Tā mǔchin jr̄dau bùjrdau wèishémma?

6) Shéi yàu chǐng tā chr̄fàn?

7) Wèishémma chǐng tā chr̄fàn?

8) Syàndzai nǐ jr̄dau tā wèishémma hwéijyā yǐhou méikāi bīngsyāng ma?

V. READING

A. Characters (Nos.272-278)

272.	平	píng	BF: peaceful [SV: flat,level]	平常 - ordinary, ordinarily 北平 - Peiping 一路平ān - a pleasant journey
273.	常	cháng	A: often,usually	常常 - frequently, often 不常 - not often 常來 - comes often 別常喝酒 -don't drink (liquor) often
274.	客	kè	N: guest	客人 - guest 客tīng- living room 客氣 - be polite, stand on ceremony 請客 - invite guests, give a party
275.	氣 气	chì	N: anger, [air]	生氣 - get angry 客氣 - be polite, stand on ceremony

276.	但	dàn	BF: but, only	不但 - not only
277.	再	dzài	A: again(prospective action): still	再見 - goodbye
				請再來 - please come again
278.	謝	syè	V: thank	謝謝 - thanks
				不謝 - don't thank (me) (you are welcome)
				多謝 - many thanks

B. Sentences

1. 謝謝你幫我那麼大的忙.
2. 别客氣，你不但是我們的學生，也是我們的好朋友．我們應當幫忙.
3. 平常最好别請先生再說一次.
4. 北平的天氣跟美國東邊兒那幾個大城一樣.
5. 小弟弟送客人到門外頭，還說:「再見，有工夫請再來玩兒.」
6. Dzǔ父母先來看我們才到南方去住幾個禮拜.
7. 今年少用錢，明年好到學校去念書去.
8. 屋子裏的客人，喝茶的喝茶，tán話的tán話.
9. 這些房子不是衣chú不夠大，就是tsè所太黑，要不rán就是太老了．也許有老shǔ.

L.50

C. Story

又有一天，張太太請客．到了八個人．張太太在 chú 房裏頭忙着作飯．他 pà 張大明不會說話，叫客人生氣，所以他跟大明說：「你說話不但得小心，還得 tè 別客氣，要不 rán 我們再請客的時候，客人就都不來了．」

大明說：「我明白你的意思，我平常是一個不愛說話的人，你放心．我今天就跟他們說一兩句話．」

張太太說：「好吧！你出去跟客人就說一句話．說了以後就進來．等一會兒再出去，說 dì 二句話．說了以後，再到這兒來．等一會兒再出去說 dì 三句話．」

張大明跟客人說：「真 chígwài，不應當來的客人都來了．」

來的八位客人裏頭，有四位想：「我們都是不應當來的」所以那四位都走了．

張大明又出來，看見有四位走了，說：「應當走的都沒走。」

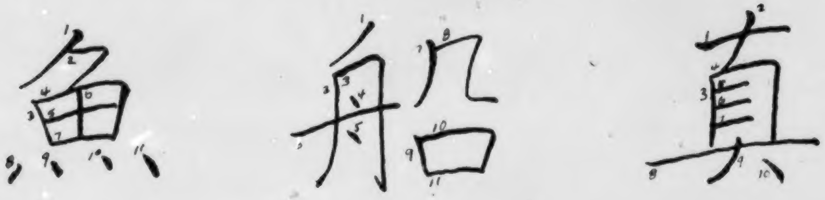
沒走的那四位一聽，就覺得很不 shūfu．有兩位想：「我們是應當走的吧。」所以那兩位就走了．

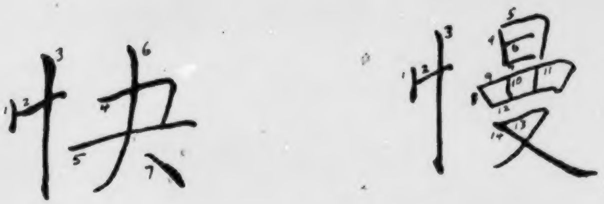
過了一會兒，張大明又出來．看見又走了兩位，說：「我沒說他們，他們怎麼走了呢？」

沒走的那兩位想：「我們是應當走的吧。」所以最後的兩位也走了．

VI. WRITING

A. Writing (Characters 176-180)





B. Radicals

1. 魚 (fish, 195) as the word: 魚
2. 舟 (boat, 137) as in: 船
3. 目 (eye, 109) as in: 真
4. 忄 (heart, 61) as in: 快, 慢

C. Dictionary Drill

Sixty Common Chinese Radicals - "Home" Group

Radical Number	Name	Radical	English Meaning	Examples
18	lì-tāo-erh	刂 刀	Knife	別 到 切 分
39	tzǔ	子	Son	孩 孫 字 學
40	pǎo-kài-erh	宀	Roof	完 客 家 寓
50	tà-chīn-p'áng-erh	巾	Napkin	帽 帳 布 常 帶
53	p'iēn-shàng-erh	广	Shelter; roof	床 底 座
108	mǐn-tūn-erh	皿	Dish	盆 盒 盤
145	yī	衤 衣 衣	Clothing	衫 被 裳 裏
169	mén	門	Door	開 關

L.50

1. Exercise: Find from dictionary the Wade-Giles romanization and meaning for the following characters:

	Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning		Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning
寃			帕		
袴			廉		
閏			刺		
帖			室		
刑			孜		
廢			益		
刊			孚		
宅			劈		
孤			裹		
寞			閱		
襲			帥		

2. Home Work: Find from dictionary the Wade-Giles romanization and meaning for the following characters:

	Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning		Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning
帕			袍		
寢			審		
補			帆		
孔			序		
庫			袴		
監			則		
褒			孟		
闢			盒		
刮			剪		
季			閣		
盤			富		

LESSON 51

I. Military Subject

A: Dialogue

Dì 二次 shr̀jyè 大 jàn 以後,有兩位 中國 jyūntwán長 要到 Ōujou 去 tsāngwān 打 jàng 的 地方. 有兩個 少 wèi, 李 少 wèi 跟 王 少 wèi, 跟 他們 去.

Lǐ:	這次 我們 去 tsāngwān,都要看甚麼?	When we go on the tour of inspection this time, what do we want to see?
王:	Dì 一,要看看 dēnglù 的 地方. 本來 美國 跟 Yīng 國 jyūndwèi 想 在 Ōujou 南 bù dēnglù, 可是 後來 他們 在 法國 北 bù dēnglù 了.	First, we want to see the landing places. Originally, American and British troops planned to land on the southern part of Europe, but later they landed in Northern France.
Lǐ:	對了. 看看 他們 為甚麼 要 在 那兒 dēnglù. 我們 還要看看 甚麼 呢?	That's right. Let us find out why they wanted to land there. What else do we want to see?

王:	當rán要看看 dí 人的 fángyù 工事.	Of course we want to see the enemy defense works.
LǏ:	聽說 Dé 國 jyūndwèi 在法國北 bù的 fángyù 工事 jyànjù 的很好. 我們還要看看甚麼?	I heard that German defense works in Northern France were well constructed. What else do we want to see?
王:	我們還要看看幾個有名的 tān 頭 bǎu.	We also want to see a few famous beach-heads.
LǏ:	因為一gùng 有幾百萬 jyūndwèi 作 jàn, 我想一定不是在一個地方 dēnglù. 等我們到那兒以後問問他們.	Since there were altogether several million troops engaged in the war, I don't think the larding was done at one place. We will ask them when we get there.
王:	我們應當問問他們用的甚麼 dēnglùtǐng, 也問問他們用了多少兩 chí-	We should ask them about their landing crafts,also ask them how many amphibious forces and armor units they used.

	bùdwèi 跟 jwāngjyǎ bùdwèi.	
LǏ:	對了！我們也要問問他們用了多少 fēijī, hūngjà 了多少天.	That's right. We also want to ask them how many airplanes were used and how many days the bombing lasted.
王:	我們還可以問問他們有多少 hǎijyūn tsānjyā 作 jàn.	We also want to ask them how large the navy was which participated in the war.
LǏ:	我們也要知道他們用了多少 kūngjyūn 跟 lùjyūn hùháng.	We also want to know how large an air force and army they used for convoy duties.
王:	我們還要問問他們 Dé國有多少 hǎijyūn, kūngjyūn 跟 lùjyūn tsānjyā 作 jàn.	We also want to ask them how large were the German navy, air force, and army, that participated in the war.

LǏ:	也 syǔ Dé國 lùjyūn 比 美國 跟 Yīng國的多, 可是 kūngjyūn跟 hǎijyūn 一定 没有 美國 跟 Yīng國 的 多.	Maybe the German army was larger than that of America and England, but her air force and navy certainly were not as large as those of America and England.
王:	我 聽説 美國的 kūngjyūn 又多又好, 所以 把 Dé國 打 bài 了.	I heard that the American air force was both larger and better, therefore it defeated Germany.
LǏ:	要是 説到 hǎijyūn, Yīng國的 比 Dé國的 hǎijyūn好 多了, 所以 Yīng國的 hǎijyūn 把 Dé國 打 bài了.	If talking about the navy, the British navy was much better than the German navy, therefore it defeated the German navy.

王:	Bìngchyě Yīng 國的 hǎijyūn 可以用大 pàu hūngjī Dé 國的 jèn 地.	Furthermore, the British navy could bombard German positions with its artillery.
Lǐ	我們要 tè 別問問他們, 他們的 lùjyūn, hǎijyūn, kūngjyūn, 怎麽一塊兒作 jàn. 我們到那兒以後, 請他們給我們 jyǎng 一 jyǎng.	We should ask them especially how their army, navy, and air force operated as a team. We will ask them to explain it to us when we get there.
王:	我們這次要在那兒住一個多月. 我想一定很有意思.	We will stay there for more than a month this time. I think we will have a very interesting time.
Lǐ:	我們明天就要走了. 不知道那兩位 fānyìgwān yùbei 好了沒有.	We will be on our way tomorrow. I wonder if those two interpreters are ready to go.

王:	他們兩個人都yùbei好了.	Both of them are ready.
LǏ:	Nín 怎麼知道他們yùbei好了?	How do you know that they are ready?
王:	Gāng才我看見他們了. 一位是Lyóu中校,一位是Gāu少校	I saw them just now. One is Lt.Col.Lyóu, and the other is Maj. Gāu.
LǏ:	我們的兩位jyūntwán長老在一塊兒麼?	Are both our generals going to be together all the time?
王:	我想不一定老在一塊兒,所以有一位fānyìgwān跟着我們的jyūntwán長,一位跟着你們的jyūntwán長.	I don't think they will be together all the time. Therefore, one interpreter will be with your general and the other will be with us.
LǏ:	那位給你的jyūntwán長fānyì呢?	Which one will interpret for your general?
王:	上次我們的jyūntwán長	The last time when our general visited

	到美國去的時候是 Gāu 少校跟他去的，這次我還 syīwang 他還跟我們一塊兒去.	America, Maj.Gāu went with him. So this time I would hope to have him going along with us.
Lǐ:	Lyóu 中校也是很好的 fānyìgwān.	Lt.Col.Lyóu is also a good interpreter.

II. Interpretation Exercise

LǏ 少wèi跟他的jyūntwán長到了Ōujou以後, 見到美國Dì五jyūn的Sž少wèi. 他們兩位tán話的時候有人給他們fānyì.

SŽ:	LǏ 少wèi, nín這次坐了幾天的fēijī, 有點兒lèi了吧?	Lt. LǏ, you must be somewhat tired, as you were on the airplane for a few days during this trip.
LǏ:	不lèi. 因為我能跟我們jyūntwán長來tsāngwān, 我gāusyìng極了, 所以一點兒也不覺得lèi. Nín知道我們得tsāngwān幾天麼?	No, I am not. I am extremely happy as I am able to come here to visit with our general, so I don't feel tired at all. Do you know how many days we will be on this tour?
SŽ:	要是把dēnglù的地方都tsāngwān了, 最少要三個禮拜.	It takes at least three weeks, if you want to inspect all the landing places.

LǏ:	一 gùng 有幾個 dēnglù 的地方?	How many landing places are there altogether?
Sz̄:	有三個.	There are three.
LǏ:	是不是一個地方要用一個禮拜?	Does that mean we will need one week at each place?
Sz̄:	對了. 每一個地方都要看看我們的 tántóubǎu, Dé 國的 fángyù 工事跟他們的 jèn 地.	That's right. You will want to see our beachheads, the German defense works and positions at each place.
LǏ:	他們在 dì 一個 dēnglù 的地方, jèn 地有多長?	How long was their position at the first landing place?
Sz̄:	有二十幾 lǐ 長. 我說的是 Yīnglǐ.	It was more than twenty miles long. I am using the English mile.
LǏ:	在那兒有多少 Dé 國 lùjyūn tsānjyā 作 jàn?	How large was the German army engaged in the war at that place?
Sz̄:	本來他們就有一 shr̄ 人, 後來, 他們覺得一 shr̄ 不夠, 又來了	They had only one division in the beginning. Later, feeling that one division was not enough, two more divisions

	兩 shr̄.	were sent there.
LĬ:	他們 有多少 kūngjyūn tsānjyā 作 jàn 呢?	How large was their airforce engaged in the fighting?
SZ̄:	大 gài 有 兩千多 jyà fēijr̄ tsānjyā 作 jàn.	There were probably more than two thousand airplanes engaged in the fighting.
LĬ:	有沒有 Dé 國的 hǎijyūn tsānjyā 作 jàn?	Was the Germany navy engaged in the fighting?
SZ̄:	有. 可是 我們的 hǎijyūn 跟 Yīng 國的 hǎijyūn 把 他們 打 bài 了.	Yes, it was. But it was defeated by the British and our navy.
LĬ:	你 想 我們 一個 禮拜 看得完 麼?	Do you think that we can finish inspecting it in a week?
SZ̄:	看得完. 我們 用 三天 看看 我們的 tántóubǎu 跟 Dé 國的 fángyù 工事.	Yes, we can. We will inspect the beachheads and the German defense works in three days.
LĬ:	那些 fángyù 工事 沒打-	Weren't the defense works all de-

	hwài 麼?	stroyed?
SZ:	有的 地方 打hwài 了, 有的 沒打hwài. 可是打hwài了的 地方 還 可以 看得出來 他們的 fángyù 工事.那兒 也有 不少 打 hwài了的 dēnglùtǐng.	Some places were destroyed,but other places were not. Even from the destroyed places you can still make out their defense works. Also there are a few damaged landing crafts.
LǏ:	我們 還要 看看 甚麼?	What else are we going to see?
SZ:	用兩天 把 Dé國的 jèn地 看看.	We will take two days to see the German positions.
LǏ:	他們的 jèn地 沒 ràng 你們的 hǎijyūn 給 hūngjīhwài 了麼?	Weren't their positions destroyed by the bombardment of your navy?
SZ:	有的 地方 hūngjīhwài 了, 有的 地方 沒有.	Some places were destroyed by bombardment, but some places were not.
LǏ:	你們的 kūngjyūn 沒 hūngjà 他們的 fángyù 工事麼?	Didn't your airforce bomb their defense works?
SZ:	Hūngjà 了. Bìngchyě hūngjà的	Yes, we did. And the bombing was ter-

	很 lìhai.	rific.
LǏ:	請 nín 給我jyǎng-jyǎng你們 lùjyūn, hǎijyūn, kūngjyūn 一塊兒 作 jàn 的 情syìng.	Please explain to us how your army, navy, and air force operated together.
SZ:	我想 等 明天 我們 到 那兒 以後 再給nín jyǎngyijyǎng.	I think I will explain it to you tomorrow, after we have arrived there.
LǏ:	我們 明天 甚麼 時候 去?	When will we start tomorrow?
SZ:	請nín 七點半 到 這兒 來, 八點鐘 我們 走.	Please come here at half past seven, and we will start at eight o'clock.

L. 51

Vocabulary

180.	chíngsying	情形	N:	situation, condition
181.	dǎbài	打敗	RV:	defeat; be defeated (without object)
182.	dēnglù	登陸	VO/N:	land/landing (from sea)
182.1	dēnglùtǐng	登陸艇	N:	landing craft
183.	díren	敵人	N:	enemy
184.	fānyì	繙譯	V/N:	translate, interpret/ translation, interpretation, translator, interpreter
184.1	fānyìgwān	繙譯官	N:	interpreter, translator (officer or official)
185.	fángyù gūngshr̀	防禦工事	N:	defense works, fortifications
186.	gūngjī	攻擊	N/V:	attack
187.	hùháng	護航	V:	convoy, escort (a vessel)
188.	hūngjà	轟炸	N/V:	bombing attack/bomb (from airplane)
189.	hūngjī	轟擊	V:	bombard, shell (by artillery)
190.	jèndì	陣地	N:	positions (military)
191.	jwāngjyǎ bùdwèi	裝甲部隊	N:	armored unit
191.1	jwāngjyǎbīng	裝甲兵	N:	armor (as one arm of Army)
191.2	bùdwèi	部隊	N:	unit (military)
192.	-jyà	架	M:	(measure for airplanes)
193.	jyànjù	建築	V/N:	build, erect, construct. architecture/buildings
194.	jyǎng	講	V:	explain
195.	lyǎngchī bùdwèi	兩棲部隊	N:	amphibious forces
196.	Ōujou	歐洲	N:	Europe
197.	tāntóubǎu	灘頭堡	N:	beach head
198.	tsāngwān	參觀	V:	pay a visit to
199.	tsānjyā	參加	V:	participate in, take part in

III. Grammar Analysis

1. The bǎ construction (further uses)

In a sentence having an object, or in a sentence having both a direct object and an indirect object, particle bǎ may be used, and then bǎ- direct object is put before the verb. The negative particle bù or méi, if used in the sentence, is affixed to bǎ but not to the verb.

1.1 S-bǎ-O-Verb

Tā bǎ mén gwānshangle.	He closed the door.
Wǒ bǎ pínggwo chr̄le.	I ate the apple.
Tā bǎ myànbāu kǎule	He baked the bread.
Nǐ méibǎ chìchē kāi-dzǒu ba?	You didn't drive away the car, did you?

1.2 S-bǎ-Direct Object-Verb-Indirect Object

Chǐng nǐ bǎ nèige shr̀-ching gàusung wǒ.	Please tell me about that matter.
Wǒ bǎ nèiběn shū gěile tā le.	I have given him that book.
Tā bǎ Lǐ Syáujye jyèshau gěi wǒ le.	He introduced Miss Lǐ to me.
Wǒ méibǎ màudz sùnggei tā.	I didn't present him with a hat.

2. Ordinarily the bǎ construction is not used and the object of a sentence follows the verb. The bǎ construction is used for two reasons: 1) when emphasis is placed on the object which is promoted to a position before the verb, and 2) when the verb

is followed by a complement of some sort which, without using the bă construction, would set the object and verb far apart.

2.1 Emphasis on the object

Nĭ bă mén kāikaile ma?	Did you open the door?
Wŏ bă syìn syĕle.	I wrote the letter.
Tā bă táng dōu chr̄le.	He has eaten all the candy.

2.2 The verb is followed by a complement

2.21 le

Wŏ bă tā dăle.	I have beaten him up.

2.22 RVE

Chĭng nĭ bă chwānghu gwānshang.	Please close the window.

2.23 PW

Tā bă shū fàngdzai jèr le.	He has put the books here.

2.24 Reduplication of the Verb

Chĭng nĭ bă nèibĕn shū kànkan ba!	Will you read that book, please.

2.25 Frequency of occurrence phrase

Wŏ yĭjing bă nèibĕn shū kànle lyăngtsz̀ le.	I have already read that book twice.

2.26 Adverb

Tā bă nèijyan shr̀ching shwōde hĕn chĭngchu.	He explained that matter very clearly.

L. 51

Translate the following by using the bǎ construction:

1) Please put on this overcoat.

2) Will you please bring my slippers for me?

3) My wife has washed those clothes clean.

4) Who has moved the tables outside?

5) I have read all the interesting books here.

6) He sold all his American paintings, but not his Chinese paintings.

7) Will you please take off your dirty clothes and give them to me?

IV. Pattern Drill

Pattern 1

Further usage of the Bǎ construction

A. Bǎ may be used in a sentence having an object:

我們的工bīng 已經把 tān頭bǎu jyànjù 好了.	Our engineers have already established a beachhead.

Examples:

1) Lyán長還沒把 dāng 陸的 情sying jyǎng完呢 .	The company commander has not yet finished talking about conditions of the landing.
2) 我們的 pàubīng 昨天已 經把 dí 人的 jèn 地 hūngjī了.	Yesterday our artillerymen had already bombarded the enemy's positions.
3) Fānyìgwān swéirán 把那 fēng信 fānyì 完了, 可是有 很多錯的地方.	Although the interpreter had already finished translating the letter, there were many errors.

Exercise:

Answer the following questions orally:

1) Dièrtsż Shrjyèdàjàn yìdǎwánle, Měigwo jyòu bǎ bùdwèi sùnghwei gwó le ma?

2) Nǐ néng bǎ lyǎngchībùdwèi dzwòde shr jyǎngyijyǎng ma?

3) Yàushr yíjya fēijī hūrán bǎ chyánbyarde fángdz hūngjàle, nǐ dzěmma bàn?

4) Nǐ kéyi bǎ jèige sywésyàude chíngsying yùng Jūngwén jyángjyang ma?

5) Yàushr nǐ méibǎ shū dàilai, nǐ dzěmma bàn?

6) Sywésheng kéyi bukéyi bǎ shāfā fàngdzai dz̀jǐde wūdzli?

7) Wèishémma mǔchin jyàu háidz chr̄fàn yǐchyán syān bǎ shǒu syǐgānjìng?

8) Syàwǔ sz̀dyan jūng wǒmen děi bǎ dēng gwānle tsái kéyi líkai ma?

B. Bǎ may be used in a sentence having an object and a direct object:

工 bīng 願意把 jyànju fángyù 工事的情 sying jyǎng 給我們聽聽.	The engineer (soldier) is willing to talk with us about conditions in setting up defenses.

Subj (particle or adverb)	bǎ	Direct Obj	V	Indirect Obj

Examples:

1) 先生要把 Ōujou 的 jyànju 畫出來給我們看. (D Obj) (ID Obj)	The teacher wants to make (some) European architectural drawings and show them to us.
2) 你怎麼把到 Ōujou 去 tsāngwan 的 jīhwèi ràng 給別人了? (D Obj) (ID Obj)	How come you let somebody else have the opportunity of visiting Europe?
3) 他不但把 syāng 水賣給我了, bìngchyě 把別的 hwàjwāngpǐn 也賣給我了. (D Obj) (ID Obj)	Not only did he sell the perfume to me, but also other cosmetics.

Exercise:

Answer the following questions orally:

1) Nǐ líkai sywésyàu yǐhòu, néng bǎ jèiběn shū sùnggei rén ma?

2) Wǒmen kéyi bǎ jèige sywésyàude chíngsying gàusung péngyou ma?

3) Nǐ kěn bǎ nèisye pándz,wǎn sùnggei wǒmen ma?

4) Nǐ bǎ yǐjr̀ sžlede lǎushǔ gěi nǐ nyǔ péngyou kàn, tā yídìng syàyityàu ba.

5) Nǐ ywànyi bǎ nǐde syàngpyār sùnggei nǐ péngyou ma?

6) Syàbān hwéijyā shéi bǎ twōsyé nálai gěi nǐ?

7) Tàitai yàu bǎ nǐde shàngyī, dàyī gěi tā fùchin, nǐ shwō shémma?

8) Dièrtsz̀ Shr̀jyèdàjàn Měigwo bǎ fēijī sùnggei něisye gwō le?

Pattern 2

Two possible reasons for use of the Bǎ construction

A. Emphasis on the object:

Dì 二次 Shr̀jyè 大 jàn 我們把 Dé 國打敗了, 不是把法國打敗了.	It was Germany that we defeated after World War II, not France.

Examples:

1) 美國把甚麼 dēnglùtǐng 送給那些小國的?	What were the landing crafts presented by the United States to the smaller nations?
2) 我哥哥把要 tsānjyā jwāngjyǎbùdwèi 的事情告訴父親了.	My brother told my father about his wanting to join the armored units.
3) 那位 fānyigwān 也許能把那個 gù 事 fānyì 出來.	The interpreter might be able to translate that story.

B. The verb is followed by a complement:

我dzǔ父母把 fān船
開到南方去了.
(complement-PW)

My grandparents sailed the sailboat to the South.

Examples:

1) 他們 gāng把衣chú
賣了.(complement-particle)

They have just sold their clothes cabinet.

2) Dí 人好 syàng 已經把
fángyù 工事 jyànju 起來了.
(complement-RVE)

It seems that the enemy has already built up his defense works.

3) 你喜歡把那張 syàng
gwà 在那兒,就 gwà 在那兒.(complement-PW)

Hang that picture wherever you want to.

4) 請Lǐ Twán長 likè 把gūngjī的情 sying jyǎng 一
jyǎng.(complement-reduplication of the verb)

Will Regimental Commander Li immediately tell us something about attack conditions!

5) 孩子告訴父親:"我還要
您把這個 gù 事再說一次".
(complement-frequency of occurrence).

The child told his father, "I want you to tell me this story once more."

6) 先生把這 kè 書 fānyì 的
fēi常 chīngchu.(complement-adverb)

The teacher translated this lesson in very much detail.

Exercise:

Fill in each of the following blanks orally with an object or a complement of the verb indicated below:

1) Wǒmende hūngjàjī yǐjing bǎ ________ jàhwàile.
(object)

2) Tā hǎusyàng bǎ ________ gěi rén le.
(object)

3) Mǔchin dzǎushang jyòu bǎ dì sǎu________.
(particle)

4) Syǎumèimei kūde lìhai, yīnwei mǔchin bǎ tā dǎ________.
(particle)

5) Tāmen yàu bǎ shāfā bān__________.
(RVE)

6) Shéi dōu bùyīngdāng bǎ shùshangde pínggwo jāi________.
(RVE)

7) Wǒ bǎ dāudz, chādz, sháur dōu fàngdzai ________le.
(PW)

8) Kūngjyūn dǎswan bǎ dēnglùtǐng hùhángdau ________chyu.
(PW)

9) Chǐng Páijǎng dzài bǎ Jyūntwánjǎngde yìsz gěi wǒmen
________________.
(reduplicated verb)

10) Nǐ bǎ nèisye dz̀________, jyòu jr̄dau bùrúngyi syěle.
(reduplicated verb)

11) Tāde fānyi búda hǎu. Chǐng nǐ hǎuhāurde bǎ tāde fānyì
kàn________________.
(frequency of occurrence)

12) Nèijyu hwà jēn nándǔng. Nǐ bǎ nèijyu hwà dzài shwō
__________sying busying?
(frequency of occurrence)

13) Búyung yídz dzěmma néng bǎ yīshang syǐde __________.
(adverb)

14) Nǐ gāngtsái bǎ nèige gēr chàngde__________.
(adverb)

Homework

A. Read the following story out loud several times:

Wǒmende lyǎngchībùdwèi shr̀ bànyè dzài dírén jèndìde dūngnánbyar dēngde lù. Dēnglù yìchyán, Kūngjyūn bǎ dírén jèndìshangde fángyùgūngshr̀ chàbudwō dōu hūngjàle. Dēnglùde shŕhou Kūngjyūn gěi wǒmen hùháng. Yì dēngle lù, wǒmen jyòu bǎ tāntóubǎu jyànjuchilaile. Wǒmen yòu yùng dà pàu hūngji dírén. Jèitsž jwāngjyǎbīng yě tsānjyā dzwòjàn le. Nèrde syāngsyarén gàusung wǒmende fānyigwān: "wǒmen bǎ dírén dǎbàile. Dírén dàgài yígùng sžle lyǎnglyán rén."

B. Read the following sentences out loud. For statements which are false write the correct answers in the parentheses provided. (If using a tape recorder, repeat true statements. For false statements, insert the correct answers.)

1) Wǒmende lyǎngchībùdwèi shr̀ dzài dírén jèndì syīběibyar dēngde lù. ( )

2) Dēnglù yìchyán, Kūngjyūn bǎ dírén jèndìde fángyùgūngshr̀ chàbudwō dōu hūngjàle. ( )

3) Dēnglùde shŕhou Kūngjyūn wàngle gěi wǒmen hùhángle. ( )

4) Yì dēngle lù, wǒmen jyòu bǎ tyělù jyànjuchiláile. ( )

5) Jèitsž jwāngjyǎbīng méitsānjya dzwòjàn. ( )

6) Gēn wǒmen yíkwàr dēnglùde fānyìgwān méikànjyan nèrde syāngsyarén. ( )

7) Dírén yígùng sžle lyǎngyíng rén. ( )

V. READING

A. Characters (Nos.279-286)

279.	認	rèn	BF: recognize,know	認識-) 認得-) know,recognize, be acquainted with
280.	識	shŕ	BF: recognize,know	他不認識我 - he does not know me
281.	奇	chí	BF: strange	奇怪 - strange, peculiar, surprised
282.	怪	gwài	BF: strange	真奇怪! - how strange!
283.	怕	pà	V: be afraid of,fear that	kǔng 怕 - be afraid that... 怕太太 - hen pecked 怕見人 - afraid to see people
284.	病	bìng	N: sickness SV: be sick	有病 - be sick, ill 病了 - become sick

				病人	sick person (patient)
285.	壞 坏	hwài	SV: be broken, ruined, spoiled; bad	壞了 [壞人	become spoiled, (be) out of order bad person]
286.	比	bǐ	CV: compared with, than	比一比 比我gāu 沒法子比	compare(them) taller than I incomparable, not comparable

B. Sentences

1. 你認識那幾個字麽？

2. 不認識，因為你寫的太奇怪了．

3. 王先生病了．昨天他吃的魚壞了，所
   以病了．

4. 是很怕太太的那位王先生麽？

5. 對了．他比你還怕太太．

6. Dí 人穿的衣 shang 比我們的更壞．

7. 張 shr̄ 長帶着幾位 twán 長正在看 jèn 地的
   情 syìng 呢．

8. 我們的工 bīng jyànjù fángyù 工事，不但
   好，也很快．

9. 送朋友出門，我們說：「一路平 ān，常
   常給我們寫信．」

10. 「多謝」「再見」都是客氣話，你怎麽都忘
    了？

11. 上禮拜我才把那幾件大事辦完了，所
    以沒工夫來看你．

12. 這條黑 kù 子比那條白的也許長一點兒，
    也許短一點兒．

13. 我數一數，就有七塊 táng ．這兒有八
    個學生，怎麼辦？

14. 那個鋪子大衣的樣子最新．每禮拜我
    都去看一次．

C. Story

王上校有一個兒子，很奇怪，已經二十歲了，不但不認識字，bìngchyě 話也說不好．

有一天，王上校的朋友病了．這位朋友住的很遠．王上校去看他，一兩天回不來，所以他跟他兒子說：「我走了以後，要是有客人來看我，我怕你說不好，所以我在一張紙上寫了兩句話．你就請客人看那張紙．」

那兩句話是:「我父親不在家, 請進來坐一坐」.

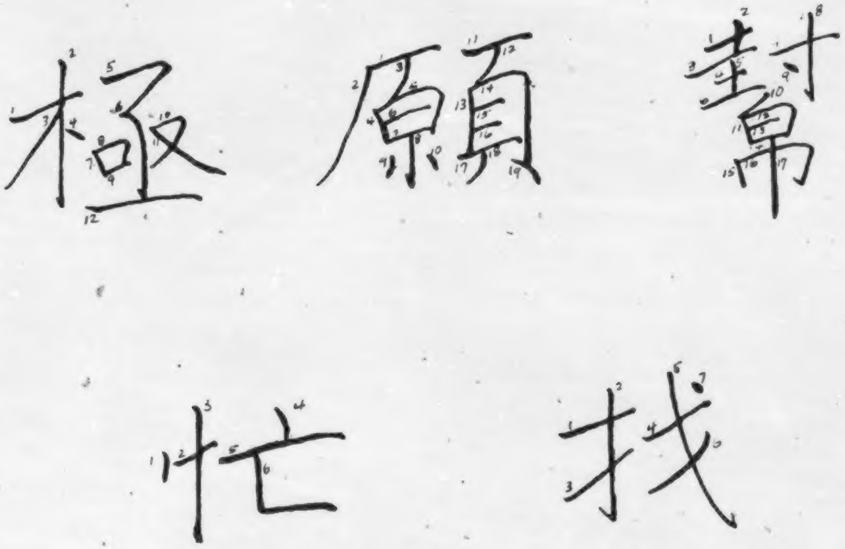
王上校走了以後, dì 一天, dì 二天都沒有客人來. 他的兒子想, 那張紙沒用, 所以就把那張紙 shāu 了.

Dì 三天, 有一個客人來了, 問王上校的兒子:「你父親在家麼?」他不知道應當說甚麼, 一着 jí, 就說:「壞了, 沒有了!」.

那個客人又問:「怎麼沒有了?」他說:「我把他 shāu 了.」

VI. WRITING

A. Writing (Characters 181-185)



B. Radicals

1. 木 (wood, 75) as in: 極
2. 頁 (heading, 181) as in: 願
3. 巾 (napkin, 50) as in: 幫
4. 忄 (heart, 61) as in: 忙
5. 扌 (hand, 64) as in: 找

VOCABULARY INDEX

B

			LESSON
bàutāndz	N:	newspaper stand	48
běi	N:	north	40
bídz	N:	nose	49
bīngsyāng	N:	ice box, refrigerator	50
búdàn..bìngchyě	IE:	not only...but also	42
búdàn	MA:	not only	42
bìngchyě	MA:	moreover	42
búdau	A:	less than, not (usually followed by a numeral)	41
-bù	M:	section, part	40
bùdwèi	N:	unit (military)	51
-byār	M:	-side, border; part	40

C

chāugwo	V:	exceed	48
chí	V:	ride, straddle, (on horse, bicycle, etc.)	47
chíngsying	N:	situation, condition	51
chř	M:	a Chinese foot	41
	N:	a ruler	41
Yīngchř	M:	foot (English)	41
chūdzū	V:	for rent	46
chūdzū-chìchē	N:	taxi	46
chwáng	N:	bed	43

D

dǎbài	RV:	defeat, be defeated (without object)	51
dǎ hāchyan	VO:	yawn	43
dàgài	MA:	probably	43
dàyī	N:	overcoat	45
dānwu	V:	delay, waste (time)	48
dāngjūng	N:	center, middle, in the midst	41
dāngrán	MA:	of course, naturally	42
dēng	N:	light; lamp	46
dēnglù	VO/N:	land/landing (from sea)	51
dēnglùtǐng	N:	landing craft	51
díren	N:	enemy	51
dǐsya	N:	underneath	47
dì	N:	ground; floor	50
dìsyàhwǒchē	N:	subway train	48
dūng	N:	east	40
dūngběi	N:	northeast	40
dūngnán	N:	southeast	40

			LESSON
dwó, dwóma	A:	how SV? to what degree; oh, how SV!	41
dyànchē	N:	trolley car	46
dz̀syíngchē	N:	bicycle	47
dzǒu	V:	go by way of; go (as to cars, watches, etc.)	41
dzǔfù	N:	grandfather (paternal)	49
dzǔfùmǔ	N:	grandparents (paternal)	49
dzǔmǔ	N:	grandmother (paternal)	49
dzǔng(shr)	A:	always (used interchangeably with lǎu(shr)	43
dzwěi	N:	mouth	49
dzwǒ	N:	left (opp. right)	41
E			
ěrdwo	N:	ear	49
F			
fá	V:	fine, punish	48
fānchwán	N:	sailboat	47
fānyì	V/N:	translate, interpret/translation, interpretation, translator, interpreter	51
fānyìgwān	N:	interpreter, translator (officer or official)	51
-fang	M:	area, region	40
běifang rén	N:	Northerner	40
běifang tsài	N:	Northern style cooking	40
fángyù gūngshr̀	N:	defense works, fortifications	51
fàng	V:	let go of	44
fàngsyīn	SV:	rest assured	42
búfàngsyīn	SV:	uneasy (about)	42
fèisyīn	IE:	I have put you to too much trouble	41
fēngjǐng	N:	scenery, view, landscape	47
G			
gāngchín	N:	piano	49
gēbei	N:	arm	43
gūngjī	N/V:	attack	51
gūngywán	N:	public park	47
gwāhúdz	VO:	shave (one's beard)	44
húdz	N:	beard, whiskers, mustache	44
gwà	V:	hang	49
gwō	N:	pots and pans	50

			LESSON
gwò jyē	VO:	cross a street	46
gwò (NU-tyáu)..jyē	PH:	cross (number) blocks	46
H			
hǎi	N:	sea	41
hǎibyār	N:	seaside, beach	41
hǎu	A:	so that, in order to	49
hǎusyàng	V:	resemble	47
	A:	a good deal like, just as though, it seems that	47
hǎusyàng..shrde	IE:	like, resemble, look as if	47
syàng	V:	like, resemble	47
	SV:	be similar	47
	N:	photograph	47
hǎu wén	SV:	be good to smell	50
hūrán	MA:	suddenly	50
hùháng	V:	convoy, escort (a vessel)	51
hūngjà	N/V:	bombing attack/bomb	51
hūngjī	V:	bombard, shell (by artillery)	51
húng	SV:	red	42
hwàjwāngpǐn	N:	cosmetics	50
hwáng	SV:	yellow	42
hwópwo	SV:	be active, energetic, lively (children)	50
hwòshr	MA:	either, or; whether	42
J			
jāují	SV:	worried, get excited	42
jàusyàngjī	N:	camera	46
jàusyàng	VO:	take pictures	46
jīchi	N:	engine, machine	48
jīchi-jyǎutàchē	N:	motorcycle	48
jīdàn	N:	(chicken) egg	45
jī	N:	chicken	45
jīhwèi	N:	opportunity	46
jì	V:	to tie	45
jīnggwo	V:	pass through or by, via	41
jǐngchá	N:	policeman	46
jwànwār	VO:	make a turn, turn	46
jwāngjyǎ bùdwèi	N:	armor unit	51
jwāngjyǎbīng	N:	armor (as one arm of Army)	51
jwàng	V:	collide with, bump, run into	48
jwàngsž	V:	killed through collision	48
jwēi	V:	chase after, catch up with	46
jwēishang	RV:	catch up with	46
-jyà	M:	measure for airplanes	51
jyànjù	V/N:	build, erect, construct architecture/buildings	51

			LESSON
jyǎng	V:	explain	51
jyàu	CV/V:	(indicates agent) by/to cause to	43
jyé	M:	section (train)	47

K

kāfēi	N:	coffee	45
kāishwěi	N:	boiled water	50
kǎu	V:	toast (bread), roast (chicken, etc.) bake (bread)	45
kěkǒu-kélè	N:	coca-cola	50
kǒudàr	N:	pocket	50
kòudz	N:	button	45
kòushang	V:	button up	45
kùdz	N:	trousers, pants	45

L

lán	SV:	blue	42
lǎushǔ	N:	rat, mouse	50
líkai	RV:	leave (a place)	41
lǐ	M:	a Chinese lǐ (1/3 mile)	40
Yīnglǐ	M:	an English mile	40
lùdeng	N:	street light	47
lwò (làu)	V:	land, come down, set, fall	48
lwúnchwán	N:	steamer	48
lyán...dōu (yě)	CV:	even including, even	42
lyǎngchī bùdwèi	N:	amphibious forces	51
lyù	SV:	green	42

M

mǎ	N:	horse	47
mǎchē	N:	horse wagon, carriage	47
māu(r)	N:	cat	48
máujin	N:	towel	44
méisyǎushŕ	A:	per hour	48
mùtou	N:	wood	49
myànbāu	N:	bread	45

N

nán	N:	south	40
nàujūng	N:	alarm clock	43
ne	P:	(suffix to questions)	43

			LESSON
nyóunǎi	N:	cow's milk	45
nyóu	N:	cow, ox, cattle	45

O

Ōujōu	N:	Europe	51

P

pándz	N:	plates, dishes	49
pángbyār	N:	the side of, flank	40
pēndz	N:	sprayer, shower	44
pídài	N:	leather belt	45
pínggwo	N:	apple	49
pyàr (pyàn)	M:	slice; tablet (medicine)	45

R

ràng	CV/V:	(indicates agent) by; allow/ yield, to cause to, to let	43

S

sànbù	V:	to stroll, take a walk	47
sǎu	V:	sweep	50
shāfa	N:	sofa	49
shāndǐng(r)	N:	mountain top	47
shāndùng	N:	mountain cave	47
shàngbān	VO:	go to class; go to work; attend class; to be at the office	43
shàngpwō	VO:	climb a slope	48
shàngyī	N:	coat (upper garment)	45
shāu	V:	burn, heat	49
shāu fàn	VO:	cook rice	49
shāu shwěi	VO:	boil water	49
shēn	V:	stretch	43
shŕdz̀lùkǒur	N:	intersection	46
shūdz	N:	comb	44
shūjwāngtái	N:	lady's dresser	50
shū tóu	VO:	comb hair	44
shǔ	V:	count	47
shù kǒu	VO:	rinse the mouth, gargling	44
shwādz	N:	brush	44
shwā yá	VO:	brush teeth	44
shwèiyī	N:	pajamas	43

			LESSON
súdu	N:	speed, velocity	48
swéibyàn	IE:	do as one pleases (lit. follow one's convenience)	41
swéirán	MA:	although, in spite of	47
syàbān	VO:	class dismissed; office hours are over	48
syàle yítyàu	IE:	startled	50
syàpwō	VO:	go down a slope	48
syànmù	V:	admire	47
syāngshwěi	N:	perfume	50
syǎng	V:	to sound	43
syàng	CV:	toward	46
syàngpyār	N:	photograph, snapshot	49
syǎushŕ	N:	hour (lit.)	48
syǎusyin	SV:	be careful	42
	V:	look out for	42
syédàidz	N:	shoelaces	45
syī	N:	west	40
syīběi	N:	northwest	40
syīnán	N:	southwest	40
syǐdzǎu	VO:	take a bath	43
(syǐ) dzǎufáng	N:	bathroom	44
(syǐ) dzǎupén	N:	bath tub	44
(syǐ) lyǎnpén	N:	wash basin	44
syìnsyāng	N:	mail box	45
syōusyi	V:	rest, take a vacation	47
	N:	rest	47
sz̄jī	N:	operator (of a bus, street car, etc.)	46
sž	V:	die	48

T

tàiyang	N:	sun	43
tāndz	N:	a stall, as in the market	48
tāntóubǎu	N:	beach head	51
tíng	V:	stop, park (a car)	47
tóu	M:	(for certain animals, like cow, mule, etc.)	48
tsā	V:	rub (face), polish (shoes), wipe (dishes, floor)	44
tsái	A:	just; merely	44
tsái	A:	then and only then, not until	42
tsāngwān	V:	pay a visit to	51
tsānjyā	V:	participate in, take part in	51
tsǎu	N:	grass	49
tsèswǒ	N:	latrine	50
tswògwò	V:	missed	46
tswùn	M:	inch (Chinese measure of length)	41

			LESSON
Yīngtswùn	M:	inch (English)	41
túngsyàng	N:	bronze statue	47
twōsyé	N:	slippers	43
tyělù	N:	railway	47
W			
wàdz	N:	socks, stockings	45
wàng, wăng	CV:	towards (in direction of)	40
wén	V:	smell	50
wòfáng	N:	bedroom	45
Y			
yáshwā	N:	toothbrush	44
yănjing	N:	eye	49
yàuburán	MA:	otherwise	43
yàubúshr̀	MA:	(yàushr̀ búshr̀) perhaps.......had better	42
yěsyŭ	MA:	perhaps, maybe	42
yīchú	N:	clothes closet	50
yídz	N:	soap	44
yìjŕ	A:	straight on, direct	41
yínháng	N:	bank	46
yíngyè	N:	business	46
yòu	N:	right (opp. dzwŏ)	41
ywàndz	N:	courtyard	49

US GOVERMENT PRINTING OFFICE: 1978-789-088/7623